Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 001SH.
- For proper handset use, read "Quick Tips" (in the box) and this guide beforehand.
- Accessible SoftBank Mobile services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 001SH is compatible with 3G network technology; supports international roaming where 3G network coverage is available (3G areas).
For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-39**).

Notes
- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-39**) about unclear or missing information.

Chapter Contents
At A Glance

Notes

- ●Most operation descriptions are based on default settings[*] with handset open (**P.1-2**) in Standby (**P.1-6**).
- ●Operations and results may differ by handset status.
- ●Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only.
- ●Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- ●"(Japanese)" appears next to functions or applications which require Japanese ability to use as intended.
- ●In this guide and on handset, "abroad" means "outside Japan" with regard to handset/service usage.

[*]With the exception that Handset Code and Administrator Code are set.

Accessory

■ **Battery (SHBCU1)**

● For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-39**).
● Use specified Charger or Headphones (each sold separately) only.

Safety Precautions

Read safety precautions before using handset.
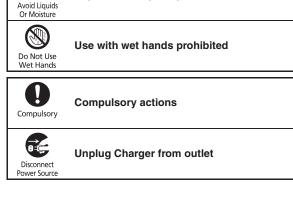
- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

⚠ **DANGER**	**Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use**
⚠ **WARNING**	**Risk of death or serious injury from improper use**
⚠ **CAUTION**	**Risk of minor injury or damage to property from improper use**

These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

🚫 Prohibited	**Prohibited actions**
🚫 Do Not Disassemble	**Disassembly prohibited**
🚫 Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	**Exposure to liquids prohibited**
🚫 Do Not Use Wet Hands	**Use with wet hands prohibited**

❗ Compulsory	**Compulsory actions**
🔌 Disconnect Power Source	**Unplug Charger from outlet**
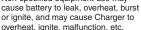
Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Charger (Sold Separately) & Memory Card (Sold Separately)

⚠ **DANGER**

Use specified battery and Charger only.
Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.

Compulsory

Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware.
May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite.
Modifying handsets is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.

Do Not Disassemble

Do not expose handset or related hardware to liquids.
Do not let liquid-exposed handset/related hardware remain wet; do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction. Use handset/related hardware properly/appropriately.

Avoid Liquids Or Moisture

Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).
May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.

Prohibited

Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Confirm terminal/connector orientation and retry.
Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

Prohibited

⚠ **WARNING**

Do not place handset, battery or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.
Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset/Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.

Prohibited

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.
Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion.

Compulsory

Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.
Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.

Prohibited

If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:
Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect Charger, power off, then remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself.

Compulsory

Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from External Device Port.
May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.

Prohibited

vii

⚠ CAUTION

Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.
Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; take added care when Vibration is set or while charging.

Prohibited

Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.
Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.

Compulsory

If your child is using handset/ related hardware, explain all instructions and supervise usage.
Misuse may cause injury, etc.

Compulsory

Battery

⚠ DANGER
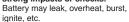
Read battery label to confirm battery type; use/dispose of battery accordingly.

Symbol on Label	Battery Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

Do not dispose of battery in fire.
Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.

Prohibited

Do not damage battery (with a nail, hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to strong impacts or shocks.
Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

Prohibited

Keep wire or other metal objects away from battery terminals. Do not carry/store battery with conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).
Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

Prohibited

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.
Eyes may be severely damaged.

Compulsory

⚠ WARNING

If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, discontinue handset use and rinse with clean water immediately.
May cause skin damage.

Compulsory

If battery does not charge properly, stop trying.
Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

Compulsory

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire sources.
Continued use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

Compulsory

Keep battery away from pets.
Pet bites may cause battery to leak, burst, overheat, ignite, etc.

Compulsory

⚠ CAUTION

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse.
Tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Prohibited

Handset

⚠ WARNING

Do not use handset while driving or cycling.
Accidents may result.
Phone use while driving or cycling is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty; park legally beforehand.

Prohibited

Power off near electronic devices that employ high precision control systems or weak signals.

Compulsory

May cause electronic malfunctions, etc. Take added care near these devices: Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/ defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.

Power off before boarding aircraft to avoid possible radio wave interference with aircraft operations.

Compulsory

If mobile phone use is allowed on board, follow airline or cabin crew instructions regarding handset use.

Users with a heart condition should adjust ringtone Vibration and Volume as needed.

Compulsory

May cause heart damage.

If thunder is heard while outdoors, power off; find cover.

Compulsory

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.

Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions.

Prohibited

Eyesight may be affected.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Prohibited

Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

Compulsory

Metal and other materials (**P.15-18**) may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.
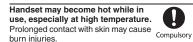
Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.

Prohibited

Data on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be lost.

Do not swing handset by strap.

Prohibited

May harm self or others; strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.

Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.

Compulsory

Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.

Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.

Prohibited

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Keep fingers, straps, etc. outside when opening/closing handset.

Compulsory

May cause injury, breakage, etc.

Watch TV from a distance in good light.

Compulsory

Watching in poor light or too close may affect eyesight.

Moderate handset volume when using Headphones.

Compulsory

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Charger (Sold Separately)

⚠ WARNING

Do not cover/wrap Charger while charging.

Prohibited

Charger may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.

Use only the specified voltage.

Prohibited

Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.
- AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input
- In-Car Charger (use in negative earth vehicles only): DC 12V/24V Input

Do not use power adapters. Using Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.
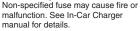
Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug to disconnect it.
May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.

Disconnect Power Source

Use only the specified fuse for In-Car Charger
Non-specified fuse may cause fire or malfunction. See In-Car Charger manual for details.

Compulsory

If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug and disconnect it immediately.
May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.

Disconnect Power Source

If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with dry cloth.
Fire may result.

Compulsory

Do not use In-Car Charger in positive earth vehicles.
May cause fire, etc. Use in negative earth vehicles only.

Prohibited

Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).
May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.

Compulsory

Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.
May cause electric shock, malfunction, etc.

Do Not Use Wet Hands

Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.
May cause electric shock, etc.

Prohibited

⚠ CAUTION

Grasp plug and disconnect Charger before cleaning.
May cause electric shock, etc.

Disconnect Power Source

Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger.
Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, fire, etc.

Compulsory

Do not subject AC Charger to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.
May cause malfunction or injury.

Prohibited

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on **"Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment"** (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and **"Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc."** (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

⚠ WARNING

Persons with implanted pacemaker/ defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.
Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.

Compulsory

If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.
Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.

Compulsory

Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:

Compulsory

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.

Power off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near.
Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

Compulsory

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset/Memory Card files or settings. Keep separate copies of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions/TV signal reception may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- For proper use of Memory Card (sold separately), read the manual beforehand.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
  Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
  Eavesdropping
  Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.
- Beware of harmful/malicious websites. Take added care when posting personal information, etc.

- An export license may be required to carry the handset into other countries if it is to be used by or transferred to another person. However, no such license is required when you take the handset abroad for personal use on a vacation or business trip and then bring it back.
  Export control regulations in the United States provide that an export license granted by the US government is required to carry the handset into Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan or Syria.

Handset & Hardware Care

- Handset is not waterproofed. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
  - Keep handset away from precipitation.
  - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
  - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (restroom, bath/shower room, etc.).
  - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
  - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset within 5°C - 35°C (35% - 85% humidity).
- Avoid extreme temperatures or direct sunlight.
- Handset/battery may warm during operation or while charging. This is normal.

- Malfunction resulting from misuse is not covered by the warranty.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Battery may not charge properly if port/terminals are obstructed by dust, etc. Clean with dry cloth, cotton swab, etc.
- Clean handset with soft dry cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
  - Do not sit on handset in back pants pocket.
  - Do not place heavy objects on handset inside handbags, packs, etc.
- Connect only specified products to External Device Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always power off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.
- Do not power off while using Memory Card; may result in data loss or malfunction.
- When walking outside, moderate handset volume to avoid accidents.
- Avoid covering Speaker while using handset.

Bluetooth® Function

SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from data/information leakage due to use of handset Bluetooth® function.
Handset Bluetooth® function is certified as compliant with Japanese wireless standards; do not use it abroad. Using handset Bluetooth® function abroad may be subject to a penalty.

■ Precautions

The frequency band utilized by handset Bluetooth® function is shared with industrial, scientific or medical equipment, including household microwave ovens, etc., and used by radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereafter "other radio stations").
1 Before using Bluetooth®, visually confirm that no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band are in use nearby.
2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move or cancel Bluetooth® function immediately.
3 For additional information and support, contact **SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information:** From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157. To call toll free from a landline/IP phone, see **P.15-39** "Customer Service."

Frequency Band
This radio station utilizes 2.4 GHz band with FHSS modulation. Maximum transmission radius is 10 meters (32 feet). It is not possible for the radio station to avoid using the frequency band of the mobile unit identification apparatus.

2.4FH1

Function Usage Limits

These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation: Camera; Media Player; S! Applications; TV.
After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (**P.14-7**) to restore usability.

Mobile Camera

● Mind your manners when using handset camera.
● Test the camera before capturing/recording special moments.
● Do not use handset camera in places where photography or videography is prohibited.
● Captured images may not be used/transferred without copyright holder (photographer, etc.) permission, except for personal use.

In-Call/Transmission Caution

During calls/transmissions, calling/transmission charges/fees apply even if other functions or operations are simultaneously in use.

xiii

Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

CE Declaration of Conformity

$C \in 0168$

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that 001SH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address:
http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/

Battery - CAUTION

Use specified battery or Charger only.
Non-specified equipment use may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5℃ and 35℃; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.
The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg.
As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide[*].
Highest SAR value:

Model	At the Ear[**]	On the Body
001SH	0.711 W/kg	0.508 W/kg

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network.
The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

[*]Please see Electromagnetic Waves on the left for important notes regarding body-worn operation.
[**]Measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

Headphone Signal Level

The maximum output voltage for the music player function, measured in accordance with EN 50332-2, is 27.0 mV.

Rights, Trademarks & Patents

Portrait Rights

Portrait rights protect individuals' right to refuse to be photographed or to refuse unauthorized publication/use of their photographs. Portrait rights consist of the right to privacy, which is applicable to all persons, and the right to publicity, which protects the interests of celebrities. Therefore, photographing others including celebrities and publicizing/distributing their photographs without permission is illegal; use handset camera responsibly.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without copyright holder permission may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

> The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software; do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**. This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA.
See http://www.mpegla.com.
This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.
See http://www.mpegla.com for additional details.
This product is licensed under the AVC Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the AVC Standard ("AVC Video") and/or (ii) decode AVC Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.
See http://www.mpegla.com.

Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.
RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc.
BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application.
Powered by JBlend™.
Copyright 1997-2010 Aplix Corporation.
All rights reserved.
JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

The microSD and microSDHC logos are trademarks of SD-3C, LLC.

The Twitter name and logo are registered trademarks of Twitter, Inc.

NetFront®

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.
Copyright© 2010 ACCESS Co., Ltd.
ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan or other countries.
This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

❀ Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

ADOBE® FLASH® ENABLED

This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.
Adobe Flash Lite Copyright © 2003-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

Wakeup TV, VeilView, Smartlink, Animation View, Simulated Call, Rakutomo Link, Arc Ridge Key and Clear Tone are trademarks or registered trademarks of SHARP Corporation.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

Genius English-Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan
Genius Japanese-English Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan
Meikyo Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

- Genius English-Japanese Dictionary MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2009
- Genius Japanese-English Dictionary MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2009
- Meikyo Japanese Dictionary MX.net ©KITAHARA Yasuo & Taishukan, 2009
- Imidas Encyclopedia ©SHUEISHA Inc.
- Complete Japanese Encyclopedia (Encyclopedia Nipponica 2001) including "Nipponica Plus," Digital Dai-ji-sen Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive English-Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive Japanese-English Dictionary ©Shogakukan Inc.
- Amazon.co.jp is a trademark of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates.
- HOT PEPPER Gourmet ©RECRUIT
- Family Medical Encyclopedia ©Houken 2004
- Guide to Prescription Drugs ©Shigeru Kimura/Iyakuseidokenkyukai 2009
- Yahoo! Answers ©Yahoo Japan

- Household Accounts™ is a trademark of Information System Products Co., Ltd.
- Kanji Grabber® is a registered trademark of Information System Products Co., Ltd.

Chara Time and MOBILE KAKARICHO® are registered trademarks of Primeworks.

Machi-Uta® is a registered trademark of KDDI CORPORATION.

iWnn of OMRON SOFTWARE Co., Ltd. is used for conversion methods for Japanese language, and for phrase prediction methods for English.
iWnn© OMRON SOFTWARE Co., Ltd. 2008-2010 All rights reserved.

SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

CP8 PATENT

S! Application, Mobile Widget, S! Quick News, S! Information Channel, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, S! Addressbook Back-up, Weather Indicator, Double Number, Customized Screen, Video Call, Input Memory, PC Mail, PC Site Browser, Multi Job, Graphic Mail, S! Mail, Feeling Mail, Sha-mail, Movie Sha-mail, Secure Remote Lock and Auto Art are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

001SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.
These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).
The highest SAR value of 001SH is 0.551 W/kg. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.
Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
http://www.arib-emf.org/ (Japanese)

*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).
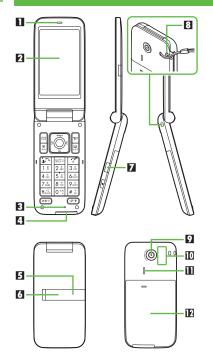
1

Getting Started

1

Parts & Functions

1 **Earpiece**
2 **Display**
3 **Microphone**
4 **External Device Port (with Port Cover)**
5 **Small Light**
6 **Sub Display**
7 **Infrared Port**
8 **Strap Eyelet**
9 **Camera (lens cover)**
10 **Internal Antenna Location**
11 **Speaker**
12 **Battery Cover**

- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over Internal Antenna area.
- Replace Port Cover after Port use.
- Avoid metallic straps; Antenna sensitivity may be affected.

Handset Positions

Handset Closed

Keep handset closed when not in use.
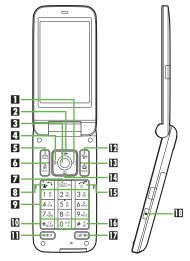
Handset Open

Open handset to place or answer calls, enter text, etc.

Handset Keys

- Keys are indicated in this guide as shown.
- Change functions with * via Set Key Shortcut (**P.1-14**) as needed.

1 **Multi Selector (right)** 🔄
Open Call Log (Received). Long Press to activate/cancel Infrared*.

2 **Multi Selector (up)** 🔄
Open Mobile Widget window. Long Press to open PC Site Browser menu*.

3 **Center Key** 🔄
Open Main Menu. Long Press to activate/cancel Keypad Lock.

4 **Multi Selector (left)** 🔄
Open Call Log (Dialed). Long Press to activate/cancel Bluetooth®*.

5 **Mail Key** 🔄
Open Messaging menu. Long Press to open S! Mail Composition window*.

6 **Shortcuts & A/a Key** 🔄
Open Shortcuts menu. Long Press to show active indicators (Status Icon List).

7 **Clear/Back Key** 🔄
Play Answer Phone messages. Long Press to activate/cancel Answer Phone.

8 **Start & Rakutomo Link Key** 🔄
Open Rakutomo Link window. Long Press to open Double Number Mode menu.

9 **Keypad** 0 - 9
Enter numbers to place calls or access functions (Quick Operations). Long Press to open Phone Book.

10 **✕ Key** ✕
Enter *, +, P, ? and -. Long Press to open S! Friend's Status member list.

11 **Dictionary Key** 🔄
Open Dictionary. Long Press to activate/cancel VeilView.

12 **Yahoo! Keitai Key** 🔄
Open Yahoo! Keitai portal. Long Press to open Yahoo! Keitai menu*.

13 **TV & Text Key** 🔄
Activate TV. Long Press to open Change Menu window.

14 **Multi Selector (down)** 🔄
Open Phone Book. Long Press to open Exchange Profile menu*.

15 **Power On/Off & End Key** 🔄
Toggle Standby display. Long Press to power off.

16 **# Key** #
Enter #. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

17 **Multi Job & Manner Key** 🔄
Select handset mode. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

Side Key

18 **Shutter Key** 📷
Open: Long Press to activate mobile camera.
Closed: Toggle Clock view.

Multi Selector

- In this guide, Multi Selector operations are indicated as follows:
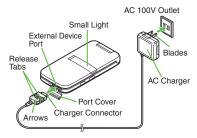
Press 🔄 or 🔄	🔄
Press 🔄 or 🔄	🔄
Press 🔄, 🔄, 🔄 or 🔄	🔄

Charging Battery

Battery must be inserted in handset to charge it.

AC Charger

● Use specified AC Charger **ZTDAA1** (sold separately) only. In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as "AC Charger."
● Handset and AC Charger may warm while charging.

AC 100V Outlet

Small Light
External Device Port
Release Tabs
Blades
AC Charger
Port Cover
Charger Connector
Arrows

Important AC Charger Usage Note

● Fold back blades after charging. Do not pull, bend or twist the cord.

1 **Open Port Cover as shown**

2 **Insert Charger Connector**
● With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

3 **Extend blades and plug AC Charger into AC outlet**

● Small Light illuminates red while charging.
● Small Light goes out when battery is full.

4 **Unplug AC Charger**
● Pull AC Charger straight out.

5 **Disconnect handset**
● Squeeze Charger Connector release tabs and pull straight out to remove.

6 **Fold back blades and replace Port Cover**

When Small Light Flashes

● Battery is unchargeable; may be defective or simply at the end of its life; replace it.

USB Charge
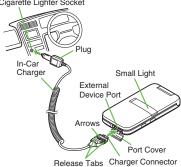
Connect handset (with power on) to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

- Download and install USB Cable driver beforehand.
- Handset must be on to charge battery.
- Battery may not charge if handset is connected through a USB hub.

In-Car Charger

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.

Cigarette Lighter Socket

Plug

In-Car Charger

External Device Port

Small Light

Arrows

Port Cover

Release Tabs   Charger Connector

1 **Open Port Cover**

2 **Insert Charger Connector**
- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

3 **Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket**

4 **Start car engine**
- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

5 **Unplug Charger**

6 **Disconnect handset**
- Squeeze Charger Connector release tabs and pull straight out to remove.

7 **Replace Port Cover**

Important In-Car Charger Usage Notes
- Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
- Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.

Advanced

Handset Power On/Off

Power On

Follow these steps when powering on 001SH for the first time:

1 ☎ (Long)

• After Power On Graphic, follow the steps below.

☎ ➡ ☎ ➡ ● ➡ ♀ ➡ ● ➡ *設定*
➡ ● ➡ *Language* ➡ ● ➡ *English*
➡ ● ➡ ☎ (Long) ➡ ☎ (Long) ➡
Change Menu window opens
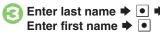
2 Select option ➡ ●

Guide descriptions are based on Standard Menu.

• My Details setup starts.

3 Enter last name ➡ ● ➡ Enter first name ➡ ●

• Change Menu display option confirmation appears.

4 *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●

Standby

• Choose *No* to enter Standby immediately after powering on.
• Hereafter, most screenshots omit Mobile Widgets and Standby Shortcuts.

When USIM Card is Not Installed
• *Insert USIM Card* appears; insert the card to use handset.

Retrieving Network Information

Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when ●, ♁, ▤ or ⊻ is pressed for the first time.

Follow these steps to retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services and TV; retrieval automatically sets Clock:

1 *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Retrieval starts

2 ●

Power Off

1 ☎ (Long)
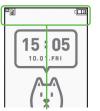
• After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

Display

Standby

Indicators (signal strength, battery strength, etc.) appear.

Indicator Descriptions

Check active indicators and their descriptions. (Status Icon List)

1 🔠 **(Long)**

Strength of the signal. Select the icon to re-search a stronger radio signal.

- Active indicators are enlarged; description for selected indicator appears.
- Use 🔀 to select indicators to view their descriptions.
- Press ● to open menu/window (e.g., Battery Meter window from battery strength indicator). May be unavailable for some indicators.

Information

Information window opens at the bottom for Missed Calls, new mail, etc.

Information Window

Information label (e.g., **Message**, etc.) and count appear in Information window. Select an item and press ● to open it.

Advanced

👆 ●Handling Information list (**P.1-25**)

Softkeys

Functions/operations assigned to ⌐, ● and ⌐ appear at the bottom of Display.

```
How's it going?
10/01 15:05
I've just finished my work.
How about you? I'll be at the
place at around 8 pm.




Options | View | MultiSelect
```

```
  ⌐      ●      ⌐
```

Display Saving

Display goes dark after Display Saving time elapses. Press any key (except ⌐ during a call) to activate it.

Backlight
● Backlight turns off after Time Out time elapses. Press 0 - 9 to illuminate it (key press may affect active function).
● Display goes dark during a call. (Backlight does not turn off first.)

Indicators

Display Indicators
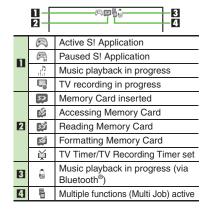
In Dual Mode, line type appears bottom right of some indicators.

■ **Basic Status**
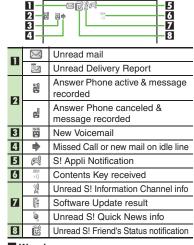
1	🔠	Within 3G range
	🏠	International roaming in progress
2	📶	Signal strength¹
3	🔋	Battery strength²

¹The more bars the better.
²Battery strength % (appears when Display activates, etc.) is an approximation.

■ **Function Status**

1	🎮	Active S! Application
	🎮	Paused S! Application
	🎵	Music playback in progress
	📺	TV recording in progress
2	📷	Memory Card inserted
	📷	Accessing Memory Card
	📷	Reading Memory Card
	📷	Formatting Memory Card
	📷	TV Timer/TV Recording Timer set
3	🎧	Music playback in progress (via Bluetooth®)
4	📱	Multiple functions (Multi Job) active

■ **Notifications**

1	✉	Unread mail
	📧	Unread Delivery Report
2	🔔	Answer Phone active & message recorded
	🔔	Answer Phone canceled & message recorded
3	📞	New Voicemail
4	➡	Missed Call or new mail on idle line
5	🎮	S! Appli Notification
6	🔑	Contents Key received
7	📋	Unread S! Information Channel info
	📋	Software Update result
	📰	Unread S! Quick News info
8	👥	Unread S! Friend's Status notification

■ **Warnings**

1	✉	Mail memory low
2	📧	Message delivery failure
3	📷	Memory Card unusable/misinserted

■ Transmissions

1	🚟	SSL browsing in progress[1]
	🌐	Packet transmission protocol ready
2	📩	Receiving mail
	📨	Sending mail
3	📷	S! Friend's Status online
	🚀	Positioning in progress[2]
4	🗒	Software Update in progress
	⏚	USB Cable connected
	⏚	USB transmission in progress
	📶	Infrared transmission in progress
	📇	Infrared file transfer in progress
	🔵	Bluetooth® transmission ready
5	📱	Bluetooth® transmission in progress (📱 appears for multiple connections)
	📞	Bluetooth® talk in progress
	🔄	S! Addressbook Back-up transmission in progress
	💻	PC Site Browser in use

6	📰	RSS-compatible site
7	☀	Weather Indicator
8	📶	Infrared transmission ready

[1]Hidden while Mobile Widget is in use.
[2]Flashes while positioning.

■ Settings

1	📋	Offline Mode active
2	📠	Answer Phone active
3	📞	Call Forwarding or Voicemail active (forwarding condition: *Always*)[*]
4	📅	Schedule/Task (Alarm set)
	📅	Schedule/Task (Alarm unset)
5	🕐	Hour Minder active
6	🔔	Alarm set
	📺	Wakeup TV set
7	📍	Manner mode active
	🚗	Drive mode active
	👤	Original mode active
	📋	VeilView active

8	🔒	Keypad Lock active
9	📳	Auto Answer or Remote Monitor active
10	🎵	Ringtone (Silent)
	🎵	Ringtone (Increasing Volume)
	〵	Vibration for incoming Voice/Video Calls active
11	📀	Show Secret Data active
	📒	Function Lock (Once) active

[*]Indicator does not appear when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls only, with Voicemail unset.

Sub Display Indicators

■ Basic Status

| **1** | Signal strength* |
| **2** | Battery strength |

*The more bars the better.

■ Notifications

⤵	Missed Calls
📞	Answer Phone message recorded
⤵	Missed Call Notification
📞	New Voicemail
✉	Unread mail
📄	Unread Delivery Report
♦📶	Contents Key received
📡	Unread S! Information Channel info
📷	Weather Indicator update
📲	S! Appli Notification
📋	Unread S! Friend's Status notification
📍	Location Info request
📀	Auto Backup complete
📀!	Auto Backup canceled

■ Warnings

✉❓	Message delivery failure
📡×	S! Information Channel info reception failure
📡	IP Service connection failure
📷	Weather Indicator update failure
📀×	Auto Backup failure

■ Handset Status

🔔	Alarm
📅	Schedule Alarm
📋	Task Alarm
📺	TV Alarm (watch)
📹	TV Alarm (record)
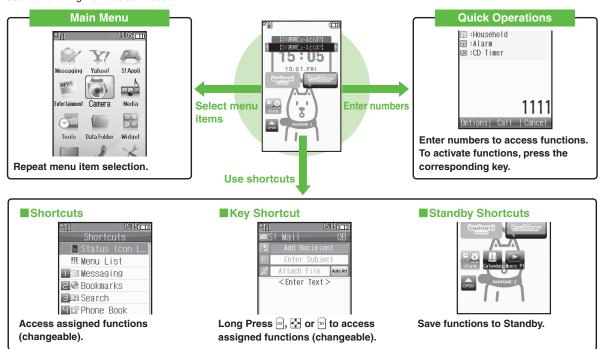
Activating Backlight
■

Sub Display Clock
● Press ■ to toggle view.

1

Accessing Functions

Use the following methods as needed.

Main Menu

Repeat menu item selection.

Select menu items ←

Enter numbers →

Quick Operations

:Household
:Alarm
:CD Timer

1111

Options | Call | Cancel

Enter numbers to access functions. To activate functions, press the corresponding key.

Use shortcuts ↓

■Shortcuts

Shortcuts
■ Status Icon L...
■ Menu List
1 ☑ Messaging
2 ◎ Bookmarks
3 ◎ Search
4 ◎ Phone Book

Access assigned functions (changeable).

■Key Shortcut

☑S! Mail   0B
Add Recipient
Enter Subject
Attach File   Auto Art
<Enter Text>

Long Press ☐, ✛ or ☑ to access assigned functions (changeable).

■Standby Shortcuts

Save functions to Standby.

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active, then toggle function windows as needed.

1

Main Menu

Menu Item Selection

❶ •

● Main Menu opens.

❷ 🕃 **Select menu item ➡ •**

● Menu/window opens.
● If Sub Menu opens, use 🕃 to select an item and press •.

Tabs

● Menus/lists in a single window appear on separate tabs; use 🕀 to toggle tabs.

Tab

Reverse Navigation

● Press 🔙. If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Returning to Standby

● Press 🔚. If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Simple Menu

● Simplify menus and enlarge fonts; ideal for users who use only basic handset functions.

Main Menu Items

Messaging	Open/create messages, etc.
Yahoo!	Browse the Internet
S! Appli	Use S! Applications including games
Entertainment	Read e-Books, receive news updates, etc.
Camera	Capture images or record video
Media	Play/download media files
Tools	Manage schedules, set Alarm, scan QR Codes, etc.
Data Folder	Open files saved on handset/Memory Card
Widget	Use Mobile Widgets
TV	Watch/record TV programs
Phone	Search contacts, add entries, etc.
Settings	Customize handset interface, sounds, etc.

1

Function Shortcuts

Shortcuts Menu

Access assigned functions via Shortcuts menu.

1 ⌨

Shortcuts Menu

2 Select function ➡ ●

 - Menu/window opens.

Changing Default Shortcuts
In **2**, select numbered function ➡ ⌨
➡ *Assign Function* ➡ ● ➡ Select
menu item ➡ ● ➡ Select new item
➡ ●
 ▪ To assign menu items, select one and press ⌨.

Assigning Files & Folders
In **2**, select numbered function ➡ ⌨
➡ *Assign Data* ➡ ● ➡ Select file/
folder ➡ ●
 ▪ For folders, select *Set this folder* and press ●.

Key Shortcut

In Standby, Long Press ⌨, 🔀 or ⌨ to access assigned functions.
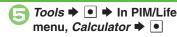
⌨	Open S! Mail Composition window
⌨	Open PC Site Browser menu
⌨	Open Exchange Profile menu
⌨	Activate/cancel Bluetooth®
⌨	Activate/cancel Infrared
⌨	Open Yahoo! Keitai menu

Changing Assigned Functions

Follow these steps to assign Calculator to ⌨ (Long Press):

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ 🔀 *Phone/*🔀

2 *Set Key Shortcut* ➡ ●

3 *Long press*⌨ ➡ ●

4 *From Appli* ➡ ●

5 *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calculator* ➡ ●

Bookmark
In **4**, *From Bookmark* ➡ ● ➡
Select title ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Infrared, Show Secret Data, Etc. On/Off
In **4**, *From Other* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ●
Canceling Assigned Function
In **4**, *Off* ➡ ●

Advanced

🔧 ●Changing item order ●Restoring default shortcuts (**P.1-25**)

1-14

Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job)

Multi Job Feature

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active.

While browsing the Internet

② Toggle windows

① Open Scratch Pad

Jot down information

Multi Job may not activate from some menus/windows.

Using Multi Job

1 **In a function window,** 🖻
In text entry/dial windows, Long Press 🖻.

2 **Select function** ➡ ●
● Menu/window opens.

3 **To toggle active windows,** ⧉

4 ⧉ ➡ **Multi Job ends**
● If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

1-15

Standby Shortcuts

Paste shortcuts to functions, files, folders, etc. to Standby for easy access.

Saving Shortcuts to Standby

1. `⚪`
2. `✧` Select `⬛` (OPEN) ➡ `●`

Widget Tab
Standby Shortcut Tab

3. `◌` `▦`

4. Select item ➡ `●`
   - Corresponding icon appears.
   - *>>* appears when more items are available.

5. `✧` Specify target location ➡ `●`

Saving from Menu/Window
- In Options menu, select *Set as StbyShortcut* (may not appear for some items) and press `●`; select sheet as needed.

Using Pointer
- After ❶, Long Press `⊻` to activate pointer navigation; select widgets, etc. (To cancel pointer navigation, Long Press `⊻`.)

Using Shortcuts

1. `⚪` ➡ `✧` Select icon ➡ `●`
   - Menu/window opens or command is executed.

Toggling Sheets

Toggle sheets to use Standby Shortcuts and widgets pasted on each sheet.

1. `⚪` ➡ `⊻`
   - To toggle further, press `⊻` or `☞♪`.
   - Sheet name appears at the top, then disappears.
   - Save Standby Shortcuts as needed; corresponding icons appear on the current sheet.

Using Locked Sheets
`⚪` ➡ Select `⬛` ➡ `●` ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ `●`

Removing Shortcuts from Standby

1. `⚪` ➡ `✧` Select icon ➡ `☒`
2. *Operation* ➡ `●`
3. *Remove* ➡ `●`
4. *Yes* ➡ `●`

Advanced

Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)

Simple Menu Features

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.

● Fonts are enlarged and appear in bold.
● Clock is enlarged (Calendar is hidden).

■ Menu Items

Messaging	Received Msg., Create Msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent Messages, Unsent Msg., Create SMS
Phone	Phone Book, Add New Entry, Call Log, Play Messages, Answer Phone, Play Voicemail, My Details, Rakutomo Link, Speed Dial/Mail
Camera	Photo Camera, Video Camera, Barcode Reader, Scan Card, Kanji Grabber, Review
Convenient Tool	Alarms, Calendar, Exchange Profile, Calculator, Assignment, Dictionary, Notepad, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Double Number, Change Menu
Data Folder	-
TV	-

While Simple Menu is active, some operations in Standby are disabled.

Activating Simple Menu

1 🖳 **(Long)**
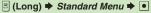
2 *Simple Menu* ➜ ●

While Using an Incompatible Function
● End the function before activating Simple Menu.

Canceling Simple Menu
  🖳 **(Long)** ➜ *Standard Menu* ➜ ●

1-17

1

Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Power it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, buses, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner Mode

Mutes most handset function sounds.

¹ 🔘 **(Long)**

```
         10.01 FRI
      Manner mode
       selected.
```

- Manner mode is set.

When Manner Mode is Active
- Ringtones and other sounds are muted.
- 001SH vibrates for transmissions/alerts.
- Shutter click still sounds at fixed volume.
- To unmute Speaker temporarily while playing music, etc., follow these steps:
  During playback, 🔘 ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* or *No* ➔ ● ➔ **Adjust volume**

Canceling Manner Mode
  🔘 **(Long)**

Offline Mode

Temporarily suspends all transmissions.

¹ ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ◌ *Network*

² *Offline Mode* ➔ ●

³ *On* ➔ ●
- Offline Mode is set.

Canceling Offline Mode
  In ❸, *Off* ➔ ●

Advanced

^ᐟ ●Changing handset modes ●Creating a custom mode ●Resetting Mode Settings ●Suppressing Manner mode audio output confirmation (**P.1-26**)

Security Codes

These codes are required for handset use. (Set Handset Code and Administrator Code beforehand.)

- Guide descriptions are based on the assumption that Handset Code and Administrator Code are set.
- Write down Security Codes.
- Do not reveal Security Codes. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for misuse or damages.

Handset Code*	Use or change some functions
Administrator Code*	Required for Reset Settings and Reset All
Center Access Code (Network Password)	Four-digit code selected at contract; access Optional Services via landlines, change service options, or set call restrictions

*Set/change on handset.

If Security Code is Unset
- Code setup message/window appears whenever Security Code is required.

Incorrect Code Entry
- Message appears for incorrect code entries; retry.
- Incoming/outgoing call restriction settings will be locked if incorrect code is entered three times consecutively during the setting. To resolve, Center Access Code (Network Password) must be changed.
  - If you have previously changed Network Password on a SoftBank handset, enter the latest code.

Saving Handset Code

Enter four to eight digits.

1 ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ◌ *Phone/▱*

2 *Locks* ➔ ●

```
Locks
PIN Entry
  Off
Function Lock
  Off
IP Service Setting
  Off
```
Locks Menu

3 *Handset Code Settings* ➔ ●

4 *Save Handset Code* ➔ ●

5 Enter Handset Code ➔ ●

6 Re-enter Handset Code ➔ ●

Changing Handset Code
After 4, enter current Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ Enter new Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ Re-enter new Handset Code ➔ ●

1

Getting Started

Saving Administrator Code

Enter four to eight digits.

1. **In Locks menu,**
   Administrator Setting ➜ **●**

2. ***Register Administrator***
   Code ➜ **●**

3. **Enter Administrator Code**
   ➜ **●**

4. **Re-enter Administrator**
   Code ➜ **●**

Changing Administrator Code
   After ❷, enter current Administrator Code
   ➜ **●** ➜ **Enter new Administrator Code**
   ➜ **●** ➜ **Re-enter new Administrator Code**
   ➜ **●**

Need/UnNeed Setting

For enhanced security, set Need/UnNeed
Setting to ***Need***; Handset Code is now
required to delete all files/entries, etc.

1. **In Locks menu,** ***Handset***
   Code Settings ➜ **●**

2. ***Need/UnNeed Setting*** ➜ **●**

3. ***Need*** ➜ **●** ➜ **Enter**
   Handset Code ➜ **●**

Using Double Number

Manage two accounts (Line A and Line B, with separate phone numbers and mail addresses) on one handset.
● Double Number requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
● Outside Japan, any Line B messaging charges are applied to Line A.
● For more information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-39**).

Two Phone Numbers & Two Mail Addresses

Line A

Phone Number A
090392XXXX7

Mail Address A
○○○@softbank.ne.jp

Line B

Phone Number B
090392XXXX8

Mail Address B
△△△@softbank.ne.jp

SH

Modes
Select from three usage modes:

A Mode
(Line A* only)

B Mode
(Line B* only)

Dual Mode
(both accounts)

*Callers to the other line hear a busy tone; messages are received without alerts.

Account Memory Management
While one line is active, call/messaging records for the other do not appear.

Phone Book Entries **Call Log Records** **Messaging Folders**

● Customize Wallpaper, incoming call graphic, ringtone, vibration, etc. by account.

Activating Double Number

Make sure signal is stable.

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Phone/*

2. *Double Number* ➡ ●

3. *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●

4. *On* ➡ ●

5. *Yes* ➡ ●

Canceling Double Number
In **4**, *Off* ➡ ● ➡ **5**
● When Double Number is canceled:
  ■ Line B calls and SMS messages are redirected to Line A Phone Number.
  ■ Initial portion of Line B S! Mail is redirected to Line A. (Full messages are irretrievable.)
  ■ Double Number account is not affected.

1-21

1

Modes

Activate *A Mode* to use Line A only, *B Mode* to use Line B only, or *Dual Mode* to use both accounts.

A Mode

Receive Calls to Line A Only
● Place calls or send messages via Line A.

A Mode & B Mode Precautions
● Line indicators do not appear in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.
● When an operation affects information on the other line, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).

B Mode

Receive Calls to Line B Only
● Place calls or send messages via Line B.

B Mode Restrictions
● Handset connects to the Internet via Line A. (During Internet connections, place/receive calls via Line B.)
● S! Friend's Status and S! Circle Talk are unavailable.

Advanced

✍ ●Renaming Double Number modes ●Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line ●Hiding Internet connection confirmation (**P.1-26**)

Dual Mode

Receive Calls to Both Accounts

● Place calls or send messages via Line A (or the account of record for Phone Book entries or Call Log records) by default; toggle accounts as required.

Phone Book Entries	**Messaging**	**Calling**
Specify A, B or Dual.	Select Line A or Line B. Sender Address changes accordingly.	Select Line A or Line B. Caller ID changes accordingly.
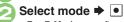
● Line indicators appear in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.

Switching Modes

1 ⌨ **(Long)**

2 **Select mode** ➜ ●
● For *B Mode*, a confirmation appears.

3 *Yes* ➜ ●

In Dual Mode

During an operation, if prompt window below appears, select a line and press ●.

    A Line A
    B Line B

If customizable by line, line indicator appears bottom right; press ✍ to switch.

If line selection is otherwise required, follow onscreen prompts.

Advanced

👆 ●Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode ●Setting main line for Dual Mode (**P.1-26**)

1

My Details & Basic Tools

My Number

1 $\bullet$ ➡ $\boxed{0 \cdot \frac{1}{n}}$

 ● Handset phone number and the name entered at initial setup appear.

Editing My Details
After ❶, $\boxdot$ (select tab) ➡ Select item ➡ $\boxed{\lor}$ ➡ Select item ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ Edit ➡ $\boxed{\lor}$

VeilView

Activate VeilView to prevent peeking.

1 (辞書②) **(Long)**

Canceling VeilView
(辞書②) **(Long)**

Keypad Lock

Lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation.

1 $\bullet$ **(Long)**

 ● Keypad Lock activates.
 ● $\boxed{\odot}$ does not power handset off.
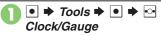
Incoming Calls while Keypad Lock is Active
 ● Keypad Lock is temporarily canceled; press $\boxed{\sim}$ to answer calls. Keypad Lock reactivates after the call.
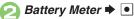
Canceling Keypad Lock
$\bullet$ **(Long)**

Battery Meter

1 $\bullet$ ➡ *Tools* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ $\boxdot$ *Clock/Gauge*

2 *Battery Meter* ➡ $\bullet$
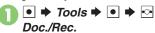
 ● Approximate battery strength appears.

Battery Strength %
 ● *100%* may not appear even when battery is full. This is by design; not a malfunction.

Phone Help

Access this handy guide to handset settings and key functions/shortcuts.

1 $\bullet$ ➡ *Tools* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ $\boxdot$ *Doc./Rec.*

2 *Phone Help* ➡ $\bullet$

3 Select item ➡ $\bullet$

For *Indicators*, select a category and press $\bullet$.

Advanced

●Selecting My Details items to send ●Clearing My Details ●Toggling My Details in Dual Mode ●Changing battery strength indicator pattern ●Changing VeilView pattern/density (**P.1-27**)

USB Charge

Disabling USB Charge	● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➜ *USB Charge* ➜ ● ➜ *Disable* ➜ ●

Information

Handling Information list	Start Here ● ➜ *Phone* ➜ ● ➜ See below
	Opening List Manually *Information* ➜ ●
	Clearing List *Information* ➜ ● ➜ ⊡ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

Shortcuts

Changing item order	⌷ ➜ Select numbered function ➜ ⊡ ➜ *Move* ➜ ● ➜ Select target location ➜ ●
Restoring default shortcuts	⌷ ➜ Select numbered function ➜ ⊡ ➜ *Set to Default* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

Standby Shortcut

■ **Operations in Standby**

Sorting icons	⌷ ➜ ⊡ ➜ *Sort Icon* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●
	● Widgets may also be sorted depending on the size.
Moving icons	⌷ ➜ ⊡ Select icon ➜ ⊡ ➜ *Operation* ➜ ● ➜ *Change Layout* ➜ ● ➜ Specify target location ➜ ●

Moving icons to front/back	⌷ ➜ ⊡ Select icon ➜ ⊡ ➜ *Operation* ➜ ● ➜ *To Front* or *To Back* ➜ ●
Removing multiple icons at once	Start Here ⌷ ➜ ⊡ ➜ *Operation from List* ➜ ● ➜ *Remove* ➜ ● ➜ See below
	All Icons *Remove All* ➜ ● ➜ ⊡ *Shortcut* ➜ Select sheet ➜ ⋎ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
	Selected Icons *Select & Remove* ➜ ● ➜ ⊡ *Shortcut* ➜ Select icon ➜ ● (✔) ➜ Complete selection ➜ ⋎ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
Slowing pointer speed	⌷ ➜ ⊡ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Cursor Speed* ➜ ● ➜ *Slow* ➜ ●

■ **Sheets**

Editing sheet names	Start Here ⌷ ➜ ⊡ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Sheet Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Change Sheet Name* ➜ ● ➜ See below
	Renaming Select sheet ➜ ● ➜ Enter name ➜ ●
	Resetting All Sheet Names ⊡ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
Locking sheets	Start Here ⌷ ➜ ⊡ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Sheet Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Set Sheet Lock* ➜ ● ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ● ➜ See below
	Activating Lock Select sheet ➜ ● ➜ *On* ➜ ●
	Changing Method for Temporary Access *Unlock Method* ➜ ● ➜ *No Password* ➜ ● ● Press ⌷ then select 🔒 and press ● to unlock sheet temporarily.

1

Getting Started

Mode Settings

Changing handset modes	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Mode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Selecting a Handset Mode
	Select mode ➡ ●
	Customizing Handset Modes
	Select mode ➡ ⊡ ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Adjust settings
	● Not available for Normal mode.
	● Customizable items depend on mode.
Creating a custom mode	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Mode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Original* ➡ ⊡ ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Adjust settings
Resetting Mode Settings	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Mode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Suppressing Manner mode audio output confirmation	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Mode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Manner* ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Audio Confirmation* ➡ ● ➡ *Do not Show* ➡ ●

Double Number

■ All Modes

Renaming Double Number modes	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Phone/*🔄 ➡ *Double Number* ➡ ● ➡ *Mode Name* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ Select icon ➡ ●

■ A Mode & B Mode

Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Phone/*🔄 ➡ *Double Number* ➡ ● ➡ *Show Missed* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Hiding Internet connection confirmation	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Phone/*🔄 ➡ *Double Number* ➡ ● ➡ *Packet Warning* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
	● Available for B Mode.
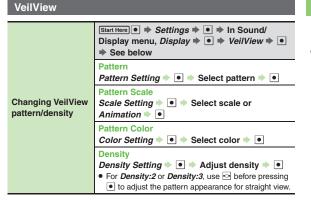
■ Dual Mode

Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Phone/*🔄 ➡ *Double Number* ➡ ● ➡ *Reject By Line* ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Setting main line for Dual Mode	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Phone/*🔄 ➡ *Double Number* ➡ ● ➡ *Send Priority* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●

My Details

Selecting My Details items to send	$\bullet$ ➡ $\boxed{0\cdot^:}$ ➡ $\boxed{\odot}$ ➡ *Set Send Items* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ Select item ➡ $\bullet$ ($\Box$/$\checkmark$) ➡ $\boxed{\cdot}$
Clearing My Details	$\bullet$ ➡ $\boxed{0\cdot^:}$ ➡ $\boxed{\odot}$ ➡ *Reset My Details* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\bullet$
Toggling My Details in Dual Mode	$\bullet$ ➡ $\boxed{0\cdot^:}$ ➡ $\boxed{\odot}$ ➡ *Switch to B* or *Switch to A* ➡ $\bullet$

Battery Meter

Changing battery strength indicator pattern	$\bullet$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ *Mini Battery* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ Select pattern ➡ $\bullet$ ● Battery strength (appears as a percentage) is for reference only.

VeilView

Changing VeilView pattern/density	$\boxed{\text{Start Here}}$ $\bullet$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ *VeilView* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ See below
	Pattern *Pattern Setting* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ Select pattern ➡ $\bullet$
	Pattern Scale *Scale Setting* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ Select scale or *Animation* ➡ $\bullet$
	Pattern Color *Color Setting* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ Select color ➡ $\bullet$
	Density *Density Setting* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ Adjust density ➡ $\bullet$ ● For *Density:2* or *Density:3*, use $\boxed{\odot}$ before pressing $\bullet$ to adjust the pattern appearance for straight view.

2

Universal Operations, Etc.

2-1

Changing Font Size

Enlarging All Fonts

Follow these steps to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc.:

1. **🖳 (Long)**

   Change Menu
   ○ Simple Menu
   ● Standard Menu
   ○ Large Font Menu

2. *Large Font Menu* ➡ ●

   Canceling Large Font Menu
   In ❷, *Standard Menu* ➡ ●

Resizing Specific Fonts

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ●

   Settings
   Sound/Display Phone/@ Call Network
   📱 Mode Settings
   🖳 Display
   📑 Customized Scre…
   📢 Sounds & Alerts

2. **In Sound/Display menu,**
   Display ➡ ●

3. *Font Settings* ➡ ●

   Font Settings
   Font Size

   Font Weight
   Normal

   Font Settings Menu

4. *Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select
   item ➡ ●

5. Select size ➡ ●

Changing Font Weight

1. **In Font Settings menu,** *Font
   Weight* ➡ ●

   Font Weight
   ○ Thin
   ● Normal
   ○ Bold

2. Select weight ➡ ●

2-2

Wallpaper

¹ ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ In
Sound/Display menu,
Display ➜ ●

² *Wallpaper* ➜ ●

```
📶                    15:05
        Wallpaper
Preset Pictures
Pictures
DCIM
Flash®
Chara Time
Slide W paper
Other Documents
Customized Screen
Download Pictures
```
Wallpaper Menu

³ Select folder ➜ ●

⁴ Select file ➜ ●
● Some files may not be usable.
● Omit the next step when *Preset Pictures* is selected in ³.
● Use 🔄 to zoom in/out or press 🔲 to rotate.

⁵ ●

Selecting Images Smaller or Larger than Display
After ⁴, select option ➜ ● ➜ ●
■ For *Centered*, use 🔄 to zoom in/out or press 🔲 to rotate.
Downloading Images via Yahoo! Keitai
In ³, *Download Pictures* ➜ ●
■ Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.
Selecting Images with Limited Usage Period
● A confirmation appears. Follow these steps:
Yes ➜ ● ➜ ●
If Double Number Mode Menu Opens
Select mode ➜ ●
Selecting Chara Time Files
In ³, *Chara Time* ➜ ● ➜ Select file ➜ ● ➜ ● ➜ ●

Slide Show Wallpaper

Set Slide Show to appear in Standby. Some folders/files may not be supported.

¹ In Wallpaper menu, *Slide W paper* ➜ ●

² *Folder Setting* ➜ ●

³ *Pictures* or *DCIM* ➜ ●

⁴ Select sub folder ➜ ● ➜ *Set this folder* ➜ ●
● Omit steps for sub folder if none is applicable.

If There is No Image in Set Folder
● Preset images appear.
Using Preset Images
In ³, *Preset Pictures* ➜ ●
Changing Pattern
In ², *Pattern Setting* ➜ ● ➜ Select pattern ➜ ●
■ To check patterns, select one and press 🔲.

2-3

Customized Screen (Japanese)

Preset Customized Screens

1️⃣ ● ➜ ⊠

2️⃣ *Preset Screens* ➜ ●

3️⃣ Select pattern ➜ ●

4️⃣ ● ➜ ●

When Selected Customized Screen is Active
● Cancellation confirmation appears after 3️⃣. To cancel, choose *Yes* and press ●.

Downloading Customized Screens

Read information (price, etc.) on Customized Screen download page.

1️⃣ ● ➜ *Data Folder* ➜ ● ➜ *Customized Screen* ➜ ●

Customized Screen Menu

2️⃣ *Download Customized Screen* ➜ ●
● Follow onscreen instructions.

Customized Screen Setup

1️⃣ In Customized Screen menu, select Customized Screen ➜ ●

2️⃣ ● ➜ ●

Applying Fee-Based Customized Screen
● If Contents Key is required, follow these steps:
  After 1️⃣, ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
  ■ Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.

Advanced

ⓑ ●Canceling Customized Screen ●Canceling Customized Screen unconditionally ●Deleting Customized Screens ●Accessing Customized Screen source sites (**P.2-20**)

2
Universal Operations, Etc.

2-4

Customizing Handset Responses

2

Ringtone

1. ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, *Sounds & Alerts* ➔ ●

   Sounds & Alerts Menu

2. *Ringtone/videos* ➔ ●

3. Select item ➔ ●
   For *For New Message*, etc., select *Assign Tone* and press ●.

4. Select folder ➔ ●

5. Select tone/file ➔ ●

Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail, etc.
After ⑤, *Duration* ➔ ● ➔ Enter time ➔ ●

Playing Video for Incoming Transmissions
In ④, *Videos* ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ●

If Portion of File Content is Specifiable
● After ⑤, start point selection window opens. Follow these steps:
Select start point ➔ ●

Selecting Files with Limited Usage Period
● A confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and press ● to proceed.

Machi-Uta® Service Registration (Japanese)

Use Machi-Uta® to play music instead of the standard ringback tone for the other party. Machi-Uta® requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.

1. In Sounds & Alerts menu, *Machi-Uta* ➔ ●

2. *Register/Cancel* ➔ ●
   ● Follow onscreen instructions.

Vibration

1. In Sounds & Alerts menu, *Vibration* ➔ ●

2. Select item ➔ ● ➔ *Switch On/Off* ➔ ●

3. *On* ➔ ●

4. *Vibration Pattern* ➔ ●
   ● To check vibration patterns, select one and press ▤.

5. Select pattern ➔ ●

Important Vibration Usage Note
● Cancel Vibration when charging battery to help avoid accidents.

Advanced

2-5

Text Entry

2

Universal Operations, Etc.

Unless noted otherwise, text entry descriptions are for text entry windows.

Text Entry Window (Message Text)

Opening Help
■ ➡ *Help* ➡ ●
Note
● Pressing ⌂ repeatedly may not close text entry windows.

Switching Entry Modes

1 🖳


```
      Input Mode
○ Kanji
○ アイウ
○ ｱｲｳ
○ A b c
● Abc
○ 123
```

● Available entry modes appear.

2 Select mode ➡ ●
● Entry Mode Indicators:

あ🔒*	Kanji (Hiragana)
ｱ/ｧ	Double/Single-byte Katakana
A/a	Double-byte Alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
A/a	Single-byte Alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
1	Single-byte Number
⊠	Character Code

* 予 appears when Predictive is active.

Character Entry Basics

Use Keypad to enter characters. Multiple characters are assigned to each key.
Press a key to toggle character options for that key.

Example: In Double-byte Katakana mode, press ¹ᵃ **three times.**

● Press 📷 to toggle options in reverse.
To type characters assigned to the same key, press ◌ first.

Example: In Single-byte Alphanumerics mode, enter *no*.

● Long Press a key to enter the current character and advance cursor.

Advanced

_🔖 ●Using Character Codes ●Using Pager Code (**P.2-20**)

Entering Characters

Hiragana

Follow these steps to enter **すずき** in Kanji (Hiragana) mode:

1 3³ₐ 3³ₐ 3³ₐ **(す)** ➜ ◯・ ➜
   3³ₐ 3³ₐ 3³ₐ **(す)** ➜ ✳ **(ず)** ➜
   2²ₐ 2²ₐ **(き)**

   ```
   ᵀᵢₗ          15:05:▭
   Message:
   あ㊐          0/30K
   すずき
   ```

2 ● **(Confirm)**

Kanji

Convert **すずき** to **鈴木**.

1 **Type すずき**

   ```
   ᵀᵢₗ          15:05:▭
   Message:
   あ㊐          0/30K
   すずき
   ```

- In Kanji (Hiragana) mode, word suggestions change as hiragana are typed. (Predictive)
- Long Press 🖹 to toggle suggestion mode between Standard, Literary, Spoken and Automatic. (Personal Mode)

2 ♀

   ```
   ᵀᵢₗ          15:05:▭
   Message:
   あ㊐          0/30K
   鈴木
   ```

3 **鈴木**
- To exit suggestion list, press ▦.

4 ●

   ```
   ᵀᵢₗ          15:05:▭
   Message:
   あ㊐          4/30K
   鈴木
   
   
   
   Menu | PrevUsage
   の は に 、 。 ？ が
   を です と で ！ も ！
   って か っての だ ね
   よ から だけど ですか
   でしょ でしょう でも
   だった でした
   ```
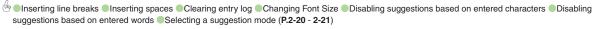
- Words likely to follow the entry appear based on previous entries. (Previous Usage)

When Target Word is Not Listed
- Press ▣ or ▸ to segment hiragana to convert separately.
  - Press ▸ to toggle Predictive and Non-Predictive suggestions.
Deleting Words/Phrases from Entry Log
  Type hiragana ➜ ♀ ➜ Select word/
  phrase ➜ 🖹 (Long) ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
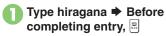
Advanced

Entering from Dictionaries (Search Word)

Enter text by referring to word definitions, translations, etc.

1. **Type hiragana ➡ Before completing entry,** 📖

   > 選択式バイ国語 🖼Switch Dict.
   > けいたい [形態]
   > けいたい [敬体]
   > けいたい [携帯]
   > けいたいでんわ [携帯電話]
   >
   > Prev. |Preview| Next

   ● Press 📖 to toggle dictionaries.

2. **Select word, etc. ➡** ●
   ● Definition/translation appears.

3. ●

One-Hiragana Conversion

Type the first hiragana to access previously selected words.
Example: *すずき* was previously converted to *鈴木*.

1. 3⋕ 3⋕ 3⋕ *(す)* ➡ ♀
2. **Select word/phrase ➡** ●

Correction Conversion

After mistyping hiragana assigned to the same key (e.g., *い* instead of *う*), follow these steps to enter intended word/phrase from suggestion list without retyping:
(Available when three or more hiragana are typed.)

1. **Type hiragana ➡ Before selecting word/phrase,** 🔄
   ● Corrected word suggestions appear.

2. **Select word/phrase ➡** ●

Katakana

Follow these steps to switch to Double-byte Katakana mode and enter *ジュン*:

1. 📖 ➡ *アイウ* ➡ ●
2. 3⋕ 3⋕ *(ジ)* ➡ ⁎⋛⋕ *(ジ)* ➡
   8⋕ 8⋕ *(ユ)* ➡ 📲 *(ュ)* ➡
   0⁺⁕ 0⁺⁕ 0⁺⁕ *(ン)* ➡ ●

   > 🔋Til   15:05 📶
   > Message:
   > ア   6/30K
   > ジュン▮

2 Universal Operations, Etc.

2-8

2

Pictograms & Symbols

- May be unavailable depending on the entry mode.
- Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as 嬉しい or 悲しい, corresponding Pictograms may appear in suggestion list. (PictgramWordLink)

1 🔅

- Pictogram or Symbol List appears. (Log appears if Pictogram/Symbol has been used.)

2 🔲 **(toggle tabs) ➡ 🔅 or 🔅 (toggle Lists)**

- While entering message text, press 🔲 in Pictogram List to toggle Cross-Carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms. Alternatively, press 🔲 to switch to My Pictogram or Symbol List.

3 **Select Pictogram or Symbol ➡ ●**

- Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte entry modes.

4 🔅 **➡ List closes**

Emoticons

1 🔅 **➡** *Emoticons* **➡ ●**

2 **Select emoticon ➡ ●**

Alternative Emoticon Entry Method
- In Kanji (Hiragana) mode, type かお or a descriptive word such as わーい or うーん, then convert the entry.

Mail & Web Extensions

Enter *.co.jp*, *http://*, etc., easily.

1 🔅 **➡** *Quick Addr. List* **➡ ●**

2 **Select extension ➡ ●**

- Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.

Advanced

🔅 ●Disabling Pictogram suggestions based on entered words (**P.2-21**)

2-9

**Hiragana to Katakana/
Alphanumeric Conversion**

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in
Kanji (Hiragana) mode.
Example: To enter *PM*
Use key inscriptions.

1 7ₚₒᵣₛ 6ₘₙₒ ➡ ᵧ?


```
⁎Yil                    15:05
Message:
あ                      0/30K
まは




An午m Kanaei  Dic.   1/16
まは マハ 八 Pm P m
PM P M pm p m 76
7 6 76分 7時6分 76年
7月6日 7/6
```

2 Select word/phrase (*PM*)
➡ ●

Using Wildcard Characters

To improve word suggestions in Kanji
(Hiragana) mode, or Single-byte Alpha-
numerics mode, add ✕s, or *s (wildcard
characters) respectively, to entries. Use
✕ or * to specify the character count:
For example, type **あか✕✕** for a list of
words/phrases of four or more characters
starting with **あか**; type *so**** for a list of
case insensitive words/phrases that start
with *so*.
Example: Kanji (Hiragana) mode

1 Type hiragana ➡ ⊙ ➡ ⊙


```
⁎Yil                    15:05
Message:
あ                      0/30K
あか✕




An午m  Mode   Dic.
🔵🔴👾👓✏🎨📺📷
赤字 赤い 上がり 赤く
明かり あがっ 上がっ
証 明石 上がら 上がる
上がれ 灯り あがこ
崇め 上がろ あがき
```

● ✕ appears; to type another, press ⊙
   again.

2 ⚲ ➡ Select word/phrase
➡ ●

Advanced

✍ ● Disabling wildcard character input (**P.2-21**)
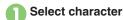
Editing Characters

Deleting & Editing

Follow these steps to correct **また、お願いします** to **また明日お願いします**:

1 Select character

Message:
あ_漢
また■お願いします
18/30K

2 [CLEAR/BACK]

Message:
あ_漢
また**お**願いします
16/30K

● The highlighted character is deleted.

3 Select target location ➡ Enter characters

Message:
あ_漢
また明日**お**願いします
20/30K

Recovering Deleted Characters

● Press [🔄] to recover characters deleted with [CLEAR/BACK].
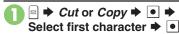
Deleting All Text

● Long Press [CLEAR/BACK] at the end of text. To delete characters on and after cursor, select the first character of text and Long Press [CLEAR/BACK].

Jumping to the End or Top of Text
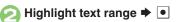
[✉] ➡ *Cursor Position* ➡ [●] ➡ *Jump to End* or *Jump to Top* ➡ [●]

Copy/Cut & Paste

1 [✉] ➡ *Cut* or *Copy* ➡ [●] ➡ Select first character ➡ [●]

Cut

お願いします**また**明日
20/30K

Cut

● To cancel and start over, press [✂].

2 Highlight text range ➡ [●]

3 Select target location ➡ [✳] (Long)

Message:
あ_漢
また明日**お**願います
20/30K

● Text is entered.

Pasting Previously Cut/Copied Text

Select target location ➡ [✉] ➡ *Paste* ➡ [●] ➡ Select text ➡ [●]

■ Available when Paste List appears.

Advanced

🔧 ●Undo conversion or recover deleted characters ●Inserting Phone Book entry items (**P.2-20**)

Saving Frequently Used Words (Japanese)

Universal Operations, Etc.

2

Saving Words

Saved words appear among suggestions.

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌
   Phone/☞ ➡ *User Dictionary*
   ➡ ●

   User Dictionary Menu

2. *New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Enter
   word ➡ ●

3. Enter reading ➡ ●

Editing Entries
In ❷, *Saved Word List* ➡ ● ➡
Select word ➡ ● ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡
Edit reading ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Obtaining Download Dictionaries

Get specialized 001SH Download Dictionaries.
Activate dictionaries to improve handset
character conversion. Dictionary words appear
among suggestions.
Some dictionary files may not be usable.

1. In User Dictionary menu,
   Download Dictionary ➡ ●
   ● Handset connects to the Internet.
     Follow onscreen instructions.

Activating Download Dictionaries

1. In User Dictionary menu,
   Acquire Dictionary ➡ ●

2. Select number ➡ ● ➡
   Select file ➡ ●
   ● Existing dictionary is replaced.

Canceling Dictionary
In ❷, select dictionary ➡ ▣ ➡
Cancel ➡ ●

Viewing Dictionary Information
In ❷, select dictionary ➡ ▣ ➡ *Info*
➡ ●

**Reply Assist Dictionary (メール返信アシ
スト辞書)**
● When replying, this dictionary prioritizes
  original message words (katakana or
  alphanumerics) in suggestion list.
  ■ Effective in Kanji (Hiragana) mode.

Advanced

🖑 ●Deleting entries (**P.2-21**)

Using Dictionaries (Japanese)

Available Dictionaries:

Preloaded Dictionaries[*]	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary, Genius English-Japanese Dictionary, Genius Japanese-English Dictionary
Online Dictionaries	Yahoo! Answers, Meikyo Japanese Dictionary MX.net, Genius English-Japanese Dictionary MX.net, Genius Japanese-English Dictionary MX.net, Imidas Encyclopedia, Complete Japanese Encyclopedia (Encyclopedia Nipponica 2001) including "Nipponica Plus," Digital Dai-ji-sen Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive English-Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive Japanese-English Dictionary, HOT PEPPER Gourmet, Amazon.co.jp, Family Medical Encyclopedia, Guide to Prescription Drugs

[*]Download and add dictionaries as needed.

Online Dictionaries

● Online dictionary use requires Internet connection incurring packet transmission fees. Information fees may also apply. Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.
● Update dictionary list for most recent versions.

Using Preloaded Dictionaries

Searching As-You-Type

1 (辞書⑦) ➡ Ⓨ

2 Select dictionary ➡ ●

Dictionary Window

● Last used dictionary appears first.

3 **Enter reading (spelling for English-Japanese dictionary)**

● Enter reading in katakana.
● Search results appear as you type.

4 Select word, etc. ➡ ●

Definition/Translation Window

Looking Up in Online Dictionaries [Definition/Translation Window] ⊠ ➡ *WebDict.Search* ➡ ●

■ Perform from ② (except ④) in "Using Online Dictionaries" on **P.2-14**. (Read bulleted sentence in ① beforehand.)

Viewing Dictionary Information
(辞書⑦) ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Information* ➡ ●

Searching by Keyword

1 **In Dictionary window,** ⊠

2 *Search Method* ➡ ● ➡ *Keyword Search* ➡ ●

3 Select entry field ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●

4 *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc. ➡ ●

● Definition/translation window opens.

Advanced

🔧 ●Changing Font Size ●Looking up copied words in dictionaries ●Using dictionaries during text entry (And more on **P.2-21**)

Copying Text

■ **Selected Portions**

1 In definition/translation window, ●

2 Select first character ➡ ●
➡ Highlight text range ➡ ●

■ **Index Word Only**

1 In definition/translation window, ⊠

2 *Copy Index Word* ➡ ●

Adding Downloaded Dictionary

1 In Dictionary window, ⊠

2 *Add Dictionary* ➡ ●

3 Select dictionary ➡ ●

Canceling Added Dictionary
In **2**, *Cancel Dictionary* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes*
➡ ●

Using Online Dictionaries

1 (辞書∅) ➡ |ʏ| ➡ *ネット辞書*
➡ ●

● Terms of service (Japanese) appear when using online dictionary for the first time; read and then press ●. Subsequently, image download options appear; select one and press ●.

2 Select pull-down menu ➡ ●

3 Select dictionary ➡ ●

● Select *すべて* to look up in all dictionaries at once.

4 Select entry field ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●

5 *Search* ➡ ●

● To disable confirmation, press ⊠ (☑).

6 *Yes* ➡ ●

7 Select word, etc. ➡ ●

● Definition/translation window opens.

Viewing Dictionary Information
After ➏, select word, etc. ➡ ⊠ ➡
Reference ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Looking Up in Preloaded Dictionaries
After ➏, ⊠ ➡ *Find by Other Dict.* ➡
● ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ● ➡
Search ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc.
➡ ●
Opening Terms of Service
After ➊, ⊠ ➡ *Terms of service* ➡ ●
■ Press ● to return to Dictionary window.

Using History & Bookmarks

Saving Bookmarks

1 In definition/translation window, ⊠

2 *Bookmark* ➡ ●

Opening History or Bookmarks

1 In Dictionary window, ⊠

2 *History List* or *Bookmark List* ➡ ●

3 Select word, etc. ➡ ●

● Definition/translation window opens.
● Not available in History List of online dictionaries.

Advanced

●Deleting history records or bookmarks ●Selecting dictionaries for use ●Selecting search method ●Selecting search area ●Opening Help (And more on **P.2-21** - **2-22**)

Searching Text

Web Search

Packet transmission fees apply.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.*

2 *Search* ➡ ●

Search Window

● *Web Search* is selected by default.

3 Select entry field ➡ ● ➡ Enter search text ➡ ●

4 *Search* ➡ ●
● Search results appear.

Switching Browsers
 [Search Window] ▤ ➡ *Change Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ●

Mail Search

1 In Search window, *Mail Search* ➡ ●

2 Select entry field ➡ ● ➡ Enter search text ➡ ●

3 *Search* ➡ ●
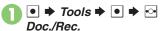
4 Select option ➡ ●

Searching within Received or Sent Messages
 [Search Window] ▤ ➡ *Change Mail Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Received Messages* or *Sent Messages* ➡ ●

Scratch Pad

2
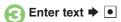
Open Scratch Pad to jot down text, and more.

1. ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ◌
   Doc./Rec.

2. *Scratch Pad* ➜ ●
   ● Text entry window opens.

3. Enter text ➜ ●

   |🔋📶| 15:05 |▭|
   Scratch Pad
   1 Save to Notepad
   2 Set as StbyShor…
   3 Create Message
   4 Save to Calendar
   5 Save to Tasks
   6 Save to Phone B…
   7 Save as Text Fi…
   8 Web Search
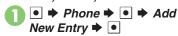
4. *Save to Notepad* ➜ ●
   ● Open saved entries from Notepad.

Other Scratch Pad Usage

Usage	Operation in 4
Paste to Standby	*Set as StbyShortcut* ➜ ● ➜ Select sheet ➜ ●
Enter Mail Message Text	*Create Message* ➜ ● ➜ Select mail type ➜ ●
Enter Schedule Subject/Details	*Save to Calendar* ➜ ●
Enter Task Subject/Details	*Save to Tasks* ➜ ●
Add Last Name/ Phone Number/ Mail Address to Phone Book	*Save to Phone Book* ➜ ● ■ Reading is not entered.
Save Text File	*Save as Text File* ➜ ● ➜ Enter name ➜ ● ➜ *Save here* ➜ ● ■ Saved to Data Folder (Other Documents).
Search Internet	*Web Search* ➜ ● ➜ Select browser ➜ ●

For more, see corresponding function description or follow onscreen instructions.

Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, phone number and mail address (enter at least one of these items) and classify the entry.

1. **●** ➡ *Phone* ➡ **●** ➡ *Add New Entry* ➡ **●**

   ```
   New Entry
   Last Name:
   
   First Name:
   
   Reading-Last Name:
   
   Reading-FirstName:
   ```

2. *Last Name:* ➡ **●** ➡ Enter last name ➡ **●** ➡ *First Name:* ➡ **●** ➡ Enter first name ➡ **●**

   ```
   New Entry
   Last Name:
   Ueda
   First Name:
   Mikio
   Reading-Last Name:
   Ueda
   Reading-FirstName:
   Mikio
   ```
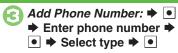
   ● Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

3. *Add Phone Number:* ➡ **●** ➡ Enter phone number ➡ **●** ➡ Select type ➡ **●**

   ```
   First Name:
   Mikio
   Reading-Last Name:
   Ueda
   Reading-FirstName:
   Mikio
   Tel 1:
   090392XXXX1
   Add Phone Number:
   ```

   ● To save additional phone numbers, repeat 3.

4. *Add Email Address:* ➡ **●** ➡ Enter mail address ➡ **●** ➡ Select type ➡ **●**

   ```
   Add Phone Number:
   
   Email 1:
   aabb@xxx.yyy
   Add Email Address:
   
   Category:
   No Category
   ```

   ● To save additional mail addresses, repeat 4.

5. *Category:* ➡ **●** ➡ Select Category ➡ **●**

   ```
   New Entry
   Add Phone Number:
   
   Email 1:
   aabb@xxx.yyy
   Add Email Address:
   
   Category:
   Friends
   Address:
   
   Office:
   
   Homepage:
                    Save
   ```

   Phone Book Entry Window

6. **Y!**
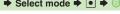
   ● Entry is saved to Phone Book.

   Incoming Calls while Creating Entry
   ● Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.
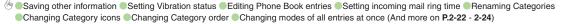
   Selecting Mode in Dual Mode
   [Phone Book Entry Window] *Mode:* ➡ **●** ➡ Select mode ➡ **●** ➡ 6

2

Universal Operations, Etc.

Advanced

👆 ●Saving other information ●Setting Vibration status ●Editing Phone Book entries ●Setting incoming mail ring time ●Renaming Categories ●Changing Category icons ●Changing Category order ●Changing modes of all entries at once (And more on **P.2-22** - **2-24**)

Personal Ringtone

Set tone for calls from saved numbers.

1 **In Phone Book entry window, select item, e.g.,** *Tone-Voice Call:* ➜ ●

2 *Assign Tone* ➜ ● ➜ **Select folder** ➜ ●

3 **Select tone/file** ➜ ● ➜ y

Saving Secret Entries

Hide Phone Book entries to require Handset Code for access.

1 **In Phone Book entry window,** *Secret:* ➜ ●

2 *On* ➜ ● ➜ y

Accessing Secret Entries
  ⚲ ➜ ⊡ ➜ *Unlock Temporarily* ➜ ●
  ➜ **Enter Handset Code** ➜ ●

Customizing Response by Category

1 ● ➜ *Phone* ➜ ● ➜ *Set Category* ➜ ●

```
▜▊▊                      15:05▐▔▔▏
 Set Category            ▊
🙎 No Category
🏠 Family
☺ Friends
💥 Business
🛍 Shopping
```
Set Category Menu

2 **Select Category** ➜ ⊡ ➜ **Select item** ➜ ●

3 **Select item** ➜ ● ➜ **Select item, e.g.,** *Assign Tone* ➜ ● ➜ **Customize responses**

● Customize responses in the same way as Phone Book entries.
● Not available for USIM Card.

Responses Set by Phone Book Entry
● Settings for each entry take priority.

Saving Numbers After Calls

After a call, save number to Phone Book.

```
┌─────────────────┐
│ Save this number │
│ to your Phone    │
│ Book?            │
│ ┌─────────────┐  │
│ │ New Entry   │  │
│ ├─────────────┤  │
│ │ New Detail  │  │
│ ├─────────────┤  │
│ │ No          │  │
│ └─────────────┘  │
└─────────────────┘
```

1 **When confirmation appears,** *New Entry* ➜ ● ➜ **Complete other fields** ➜ y

Saving to an Existing Entry
  In ①, *New Detail* ➜ ● ➜ **Select entry**
  ➜ ● ➜ **Complete other fields** ➜ y

Using Phone Book Entries

Dialing via Phone Book

1 ☐ ➡ ⊙ **Select katakana row**

```
📶          15:05 📧
◀ ま や ら わ A ✱ ▶
  🔍  Search
👤 Kimura Tetsuya
👤 Kondo Koichi
```
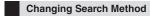
Entry Search Window (By あかさたな)

● When using Double Number in Dual Mode, line indicators appear.

2 **Select entry** ➡ ●

3 **Select phone number**

4 🔽

Placing Video Calls
After **3**, ● ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ●

Changing Search Method

Phone Book Search Methods:

By あかさたな	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By Reading	Shows all entries in Reading order (katakana, alphabetical then numerical)

1 In entry search window, ✉ ➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ ●

2 *Sort Entries* ➡ ●

3 Select method ➡ ●

Changing Search Method Temporarily
[Entry Search Window] 🔽 **(press to toggle search methods)**
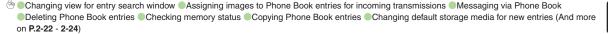
Opening from Other Functions

Example: Enter a recipient via Phone Book when sending a message.

```
📶          15:05 📧
Select Recipient
📧 Phone Book
📖 Sent Log
📖 Received Log
👥 Select Group
▷ Speed Dial/Mail
```

Select Recipient Window

1 *Phone Book* ➡ ●
● Entry search window opens.

2 Select entry ➡ ●

3 Select phone number or mail address ➡ ●
● Recipient is entered.
● Omit **3** if only one number or address is saved.

Advanced

Customized Screen

Canceling Customized Screen	● ➡ 🔤 ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Canceling Customized Screen unconditionally	🔤 ➡ *Menu List* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting Customized Screens	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ Select Customized Screen ➡ 🔤 ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● When the corresponding Contents Key has been downloaded, choose *Yes* or *No* and press ●.
Accessing Customized Screen source sites	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ Select Customized Screen ➡ 🔤 ➡ *Web Access* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.

Machi-Uta®

	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ ● ➡ *Machi-Uta* ➡ ● ➡ See below
Using Machi-Uta® (Japanese)	**Searching Music** *Music Search* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions. **Changing Settings** *Settings* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions. **Viewing Machi-Uta® Information** *What's Machi-Uta* ➡ ●

Text Entry

■ Entry & Edit

Using Character Codes	In a text entry window, 🔤 ➡ *Character Code* ➡ ● ➡ Enter four digits
Using Pager Code	In a text entry window, 🔤 ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *Input Method* ➡ ● ➡ *Pager Code* ➡ ● ● Return to text entry window and enter two digits.
Inserting line breaks	**At the End of Text** In a text entry window, ♀ **Mid-Entry** In a text entry window, 🔤 ➡ 🔤 (select *Symbols*) ➡ (🔤 or ᵧ ➡) ∢ (line break) ➡ ●
Inserting spaces	**Mid-Entry** In a text entry window, ▭ **Between Entered Text** In a text entry window, 🔤 ➡ 🔤 (select *Symbols*) ➡ (🔤 or ᵧ ➡) ▯ (space) ➡ ●
Clearing entry log	In a text entry window, 🔤 ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *Reset Log* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Undo conversion or recover deleted characters	In a text entry window, 🔤 ➡ *Undo/Recover* ➡ ●
Inserting Phone Book entry items	In a text entry window, 🔤 ➡ *Insert/Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ●
Changing Font Size	In a text entry window, 🔤 ➡ *Insert/Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ *Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●

■ Conversion

Disabling suggestions based on entered characters	In a text entry window, ⊡ ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *Predictive* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Disabling suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window, ⊡ ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *Previous Usage* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Disabling Pictogram suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window, ⊡ ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *PictgramWordLink* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ● My Pictograms are not affected.
Selecting a suggestion mode	In a text entry window, ⊡ ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *Personal Mode* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ●
Disabling wildcard character input	In a text entry window, ⊡ ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *Wild Card Input* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

User Dictionary

Deleting entries	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Phone/*📷 ➡ *User Dictionary* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Word List* ➡ ● ➡ Select word ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Dictionary

■ Preloaded & Online Dictionaries

Changing Font Size	(#まめ) ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	Copy text and return to Standby ➡ (#まめ) ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Search by Copied Text* ➡ ● ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc. ➡ ● ● If a confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Deleting history records or bookmarks	[Start Here] (#まめ) ➡ ⊡ ➡ *History List* or *Bookmark List* ➡ ● ➡ See below **One Word** Select word ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **All Words** ⊡ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Looking up scanned kanji in dictionaries	(#まめ) ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Kanji Grabber* ➡ ● ➡ Frame kanji in Loupe ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc. ➡ ●
Looking up scanned text in dictionaries	(#まめ) ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ Frame text in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc. ➡ ●
Using dictionaries during text entry	Type text ➡ Before completing entry, (#まめ) ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ● ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc. ➡ ● ● To insert Index Word into text, press ⊡ after the steps above, then select *Paste Index Word* and press ●.

Universal Operations, Etc.

2

■ Online Dictionaries

Updating dictionary list	(辞書①) → ⚆ → **ネット辞書** → ● → ⊡ → *Update Dictionaries* → ● → *Yes* → ●
Selecting dictionaries for use	(辞書①) → ⚆ → **ネット辞書** → ● → ⊡ → *Edit Dict. List* → ● → Select dictionary → ● (☐/✓) → ⚆
Selecting image download option	(辞書①) → ⚆ → **ネット辞書** → ● → ⊡ → *Show Image* → ● → Select option → ● ● For *Auto*, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Selecting search method	(辞書①) → ⚆ → **ネット辞書** → ● → Select pull-down menu → ● → Select dictionary → ● → ⊡ → *Set Search Method* → ● → Select option → ● ● Not available when **すべて** or unsupported dictionary is selected.
Selecting search area	(辞書①) → ⚆ → **ネット辞書** → ● → Select pull-down menu → ● → Select dictionary → ● → ⊡ → *Set Search Area* → ● → Select area → ● ● Not available when **すべて** or unsupported dictionary is selected.
Opening Help	(辞書①) → ⚆ → **ネット辞書** → ● → Select pull-down menu → ● → Select dictionary → ● → ⊡ → *Help* → ● → *Yes* → ●

Phone Book

■ View Settings

Changing view for entry search window	● → *Phone* → ● → *Settings/Manage* → ● → *Ph.Book Settings* → ● → *View Settings* → ● → *List Only* → ●
Hiding confirmation after calls to/from unsaved numbers	● → *Phone* → ● → *Settings/Manage* → ● → *Ph.Book Settings* → ● → *New Number Prompt* → ● → *Incoming Call* or *Outgoing Call* → ● → *Off* → ●

■ Phone Book Entry

Press ⚆ at the end to save entry. (At least a name, phone number or mail address must be entered.)

Saving other information	[Start Here] ● → *Phone* → ● → *Add New Entry* → ● → See below
	Address *Address:* → ● → Select item → ● → Complete field → ● → ⚆
	Office *Office:* → ● → Select item → ● → Enter text → ● → ⚆
	Homepage *Homepage:* → ● → Enter URL → ● → Select type → ●
	Note *Note:* → ● → Enter text → ●
	Birthday *Birthday:* → ● → Enter date → ●

Setting Vibration status	Start Here ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Select item, e.g., *Vibration-Message:* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Activating Vibration *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ 🔅
	Changing Pattern *Vibration Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ 🔅
Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions	Start Here ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ *Picture:* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Assigning Images *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ●
	Capturing Images *Take a Photo* ➡ ● ➡ Frame image on Display ➡ ● ➡ ●

■ **Editing Entries & Categories**

Editing Phone Book entries	🔍 ➡ Select entry ➡ 🔲 ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ● ➡ 🔽 • Edit Reading after editing names.
Setting incoming mail ring time	🔍 ➡ Select entry ➡ 🔲 ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Tone-New Message:* ➡ ● ➡ *Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ● ➡ 🔽 • Available for compatible ringtones.
Renaming Categories	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Category* ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ *Edit Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Changing Category icons	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Category* ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ *Change Icon* ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ●
Changing Category order	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Category* ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ 🔽 ➡ Select target location ➡ ● • View for *By Category* Phone Book search changes accordingly.

■ **Using Entries**

Messaging via Phone Book	Start Here 🔍 ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Phone Numbers Select phone number ➡ ● ➡ *Create Message* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ 🔽
	Mail Addresses Select mail address ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ 🔽
Initiating S! Circle Talk via Phone Book	🔍 ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select phone number ➡ ● ➡ *Call S! Circle Talk* ➡ ● ➡ ● • Set Connection status to *Online* first.
Placing international calls via Phone Book	🔍 ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select phone number ➡ ● ➡ *Int'l Call* ➡ ● ➡ Select country ➡ ● ➡ 📞

2

Universal Operations, Etc.

2-23

2

Universal Operations, Etc.

■ Managing Entries

Deleting Phone Book entries	**One Entry** a ⇒ Select entry ⇒ B ⇒ *Delete* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Yes* ⇒ ●
	All Entries ● ⇒ *Phone* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Settings/Manage* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Manage Entries* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Delete All* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select entry type ⇒ ● ⇒ *Yes* ⇒ ●
Checking memory status	● ⇒ *Phone* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Settings/Manage* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Manage Entries* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Memory Status* ⇒ ●
Copying Phone Book entries	**One Entry (Handset → USIM Card)** a ⇒ Select entry ⇒ B ⇒ *Manage Entries* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Copy Entry to USIM* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Yes* ⇒ ●
	One Entry (USIM Card → Handset) a ⇒ B ⇒ *Ph.Book Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Select Phone Book* ⇒ ● ⇒ *USIM Memory* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select entry ⇒ B ⇒ *Manage Entries* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Copy Entry to Phone* ⇒ ●
	All Entries a ⇒ B ⇒ *Manage Entries* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Copy All* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select method ⇒ ● ⇒ *Yes* ⇒ ● ● If handset/USIM Card memory is low, some entries may not be copied.

Editing Categories on USIM Card	**Start Here** ● ⇒ *Phone* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Set Category* ⇒ ● ⇒ B ⇒ *Change to USIM* ⇒ ● ⇒ **See below**
	Renaming Categories Select Category ⇒ ● ⇒ *Edit Name* ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter name ⇒ ●
	Changing Order Select Category ⇒ Y ⇒ Select target location ⇒ ●
	Changing Icons Select Category ⇒ ● ⇒ *Change Icon* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select Pictogram ⇒ ●
Changing default storage media for new entries	● ⇒ *Phone* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Settings/Manage* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Ph.Book Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Save New Entry* ⇒ ● ⇒ *USIM Memory* or *Ask Each Time* ⇒ ●
Switching reference Phone Book	● ⇒ *Phone* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Settings/Manage* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Ph.Book Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Select Phone Book* ⇒ ● ⇒ *USIM Memory* or *Both* ⇒ ●

■ Mode (Double Number)

Activate Double Number first.

Changing modes of all entries at once	● ⇒ *Phone* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Settings/Manage* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Manage Entries* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Change Mode(All)* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select mode
Changing modes of multiple entries	a ⇒ B ⇒ *Manage Entries* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Multiple Selection* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select entry ⇒ ● (☐/☑) ⇒ B ⇒ *Change Mode* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select mode ⇒ ●
Changing modes of entries by Category	a ⇒ Select Category ⇒ B ⇒ *Manage Entries* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Change Mode(Category)* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select mode ⇒ ● ● Set search method to *By Category* first.

2

Customized Screen

❓ **Customized Screen is not applied**

- Some Customized Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.

Phone Book

❓ **Assigned images do not appear for incoming transmissions**

- Source files may be deleted or moved to Memory Card; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., be sure that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Images do not appear if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Images may not appear when another function is active, etc.

❓ **Handset does not ring for incoming transmissions as set**

- Source files may be deleted; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., be sure that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Ringtone/ringvideo settings are disabled if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Memory Card with source files may be removed; reinsert the card to restore settings.

❓ **Cannot enter 16 characters for Category names**

- Character entry limit for Category names may be lower depending on the USIM Card in use.

3

Calling

Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets. (Emergency Location Report)
001SH reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with *184*). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Location Information is not reported during international roaming.

Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Function Lock	Possible
Bar Outgoing Calls	
Offline Mode	Restricted
Keypad Lock	
PIN Entry	

Voice Calling

Answering a Voice Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.

Incoming Voice Call Window

1 **📞 to accept the call**
   ● Call connects.

2 **☎ ➡ Call ends**

Muting Ringer Temporarily
   When a call arrives, 🔤
Earpiece Volume
   During a call, 🎚
After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers
● Save to Phone Book confirmation appears. Select *New Entry* or *New Detail* and press ● to save number; Phone Book entry window or entry search window opens, respectively.

Placing a Voice Call

1 **Enter phone number with area code**
   ● To correct entry, use ☷ to place cursor under the digit and press 🔤. To delete the digits above and after the cursor, Long Press 🔤.

2 **📞**
   ● Wait for receiver to accept the call.

3 **☎ ➡ Call ends**

Specifying Line in Dual Mode
   After ❶, ● ➡ *Select Line(Voice)* ➡
   ● ➡ **Select line** ➡ ●

Placing an International Call

1 **Enter phone number with area code ➡** 📧

2 *Int'l Call* ➡ ●

3 **Select country ➡** ● ➡ 📞
   ● Handset dials the number.

4 **☎ ➡ Call ends**

Calling Unlisted Countries
   In ❸, *Enter Code* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter country code ➡** ● ➡ 📞

Advanced

👆 ●Rejecting calls ●Placing calls on hold ●Answering with Headphones ●Adjusting Earpiece Volume ●Sending/blocking Caller ID ●Muting Microphone
   ●Recording caller voice (And more on **P.3-15** - **3-17**)
   ●Answering calls automatically when using Headphones (And more on **P.3-21**)

3-3

3

Calling
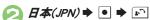
Placing Calls from Outside Japan

See below to place a call to Japan from abroad.
001SH supports international roaming in 3G
areas. Apply for Global Roaming beforehand.
See SoftBank Mobile Website for details:
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/
Access roaming area/rate information or print
it out to carry with you while traveling abroad.

1. **Enter phone number with
   area code** ➡ 回 ➡ *Int'l Call*
   ➡ ●

2. *日本(JPN)* ➡ ● ➡ 🖅
   ● Handset dials the number.
   ● To call other countries, select the
   target country instead of *日本(JPN)*.

3. ☎ ➡ **Call ends**

Calling SoftBank Handsets
● In ②, always select *日本(JPN)*.
**Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the
Same Country**
　Enter phone number with area code
　➡ 🖅 ➡ *Dial to Your Stay* ➡ ●
Calls Overseas
● Calling may not be possible outside Japan.
Connections depend on available network,
signal strength, and handset settings.

Improving Earpiece Sound Quality

When the other party's voice sounds
muffled, Clear Tone may improve audibility.

1. **During a call,** 🔾
   ● Clear Tone activates.
   ● To cancel, press 🔾 again.

Advanced

🔊 ●Placing calls by entering country code directly ●Using Roaming Dial Assistant to place international calls while outside Japan (And more on **P.3-16**)

3

Calling

Answer Phone

Record caller messages on handset. Answer Phone cannot be used in power off or out-of-range. Use Voicemail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.

1 `CLEAR/BACK` **(Long)**
● Answer Phone is set.

Canceling Answer Phone
`CLEAR/BACK` **(Long)**
Answering Calls while Recording
`↗`
■ No message will be recorded.

Playing Messages

1 `CLEAR/BACK`

2 **Select record ➡ ●**
● Playback stops automatically at the end of message.

Deleting One Record
After 1, select record ➡ `✉` ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting All Records
After 1, `✉` ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ Playback Operations

Volume Control	`↕`
Replay/Skip Backward	`↺`
Stop	`●`
Skip Forward	`↻`
Delete	`✉` ➡ *Yes* ➡ `●`
Loudspeaker On/Off	`Y!`

Advanced

🅐 ●Recording messages when Answer Phone is inactive ●Changing ring time ●Sampling outgoing message ●Muting Earpiece (**P.3-15**)

3-5
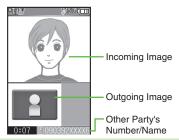
Video Calling

View the other party's image or send an Outgoing Image to compatible handsets. Handle Video Calls like Voice Calls. This page describes functions/operations unique to Video Call.

Window Description

Incoming Image

Outgoing Image

Other Party's Number/Name

Important Video Call Usage Notes
- If both parties are using handset models without internal cameras, Video Call cannot be used as intended.
- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)

Answering a Video Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.

Incoming Video Call Window

1 🔄 **to accept the call**
- Alternative Image is sent. (Video Call charges apply to the caller.)

2 ☎ ➡ **Call ends**

Answering with Camera Image
[Incoming Video Call Window] ● ➡ *No* ➡ ●

■ **Engaged Video Call Operations**

Toggle View	📷
Toggle Outgoing Image	●
Open Help	📧 ➡ *Help* ➡ ●

Placing a Video Call

1 **Enter phone number ➡ ●**

2 *Video Call* ➡ ●

- Image appears when call is accepted.

3 ☎ ➡ **Call ends**

Specifying Line in Dual Mode
After ❶, *Select Line(Video)* ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ●

Advanced
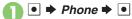
🔟 ●Answering Video Calls automatically (And more on **P.3-15**)
●Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness ●Disabling touch tone sending (**P.3-17**)
●Sending camera image when initiating Video Calls ●Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls ●Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls (And more on **P.3-22**)

Placing Calls Easily

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial/Mail list or Rakutomo Link for easy dialing.
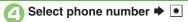
Using Speed Dial

Saving Entries

1. $\bullet$ ➡ *Phone* ➡ $\bullet$

2. *Speed Dial/Mail* ➡ $\bullet$

3. *<Empty>* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ Select entry ➡ $\bullet$

4. Select phone number ➡ $\bullet$

- Select mail address prompt appears. To save mail address for easy messaging, select one and press $\bullet$. (Omit ⑤.)

5. *Do not Assign* ➡ $\bullet$

6. $\boxed{Y'}$ ➡ **Saved**
   - To save additional entries, repeat ③ - ⑤.

Using Headphones for Speed Dial
- Save a phone number to $\boxed{0}$.

Removing Speed Dial Entries
   In ③, select entry ➡ $\boxed{\square}$ ➡ *Remove Selected* or *Remove All* ➡ $\bullet$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\bullet$
- Omit entry selection step when removing all entries.

Placing a Call

1. $\boxed{0}$ - $\boxed{9_{wxyz}}$ $\boxed{9_{wxyz}}$ (entry number)

2. $\boxed{}$

Placing Video Calls
   In ②, $\bullet$ ➡ *Speed Video* ➡ $\bullet$

Using Headphones
- In Standby, Long Press Call Button until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in $\boxed{0}$. To end the call, Long Press Call Button until a beep sounds.

Using Rakutomo Link

Saving Entries

Follow these steps to save entries from Phone Book:

(Entries saved to Rakutomo Link are saved to Speed Dial list as well.)

1 ⬚

Ⓣⓘⓛ   15:05
Rakutomo Link
◀ 0 ┃ 1 ┃ 2 ┃ 3 ┃ 4 ┃ 5 ▶

<Empty>
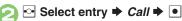
2 ⬚ **Select blank entry**
(*<Empty>* **appears)** ➡ ●

3 *Refer Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡
Select entry ➡ ●
● To select a different saved number, press ●, select one and press ●.

4 ⓨ ➡ *Saved*
● To save additional entries, repeat ② - ④.

Saving Entries Directly
In ③, *Direct Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete fields ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ ➡ ④
Saving Note
After ④, *<Note Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●
Editing Entries (Phone Number)
⬚ ➡ ⬚ Select entry ➡ ⓔ ➡ *Change Registered Contents* ➡ ● ➡ *Change the Use Address* ➡ ● ➡ *Call number:* ➡ ● ➡ Select new phone number ➡ ● ➡ ④

Placing a Call

1 ⬚

Ⓣⓘⓛ   15:05
Rakutomo Link
◀ 0 ┃ 1 ┃ 2 ┃ 3 ┃ 4 ┃ 5 ▶

Ueda Mikio

🖹 090392XXXX1
▶Empty
┌─────────────┐
│   Call   │
└─────────────┘
┌─────────────┐
│Create Message│
└─────────────┘

2 ⬚ **Select entry** ➡ *Call* ➡ ●

Placing Video Calls
In ②, ⬚ (select entry) ➡ ⓔ ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ●
Deleting Note
⬚ ➡ ⬚ Select entry ➡ ⓔ ➡ *Delete the Note* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Removing Rakutomo Link Entries
⬚ ➡ ⬚ Select entry ➡ ⓔ ➡ *Remove* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Call Log

Open recent dialed/received call records.

1. ⟲ **(Dialed) or** ⟳ **(Received)**

   Call Log

   | All | Dialed | Dialed (Ranking) | Received |

   📷📶 Ueda Mikio
   10/10/01 15:05

   📷📶 090392XXXX7
   10/10/01 11:58

2. **Select record** ➡ ●

   When the Same Number is Dialed More than Once Using the Same Call Option
   ● Only the last record appears. (All records appear for S! Circle Talk.)

   Hiding Dialed Ranking
     In ②, ⟲ *Dialed* **or** *Dialed (Ranking)*
     ➡ ⊟ ➡ *Hide Dialed Ranking* ➡ ●
   ■ To show Dialed Ranking again, follow these steps:
     In ②, ⟲ *Dialed* ➡ ⊟ ➡ *Show Dialed Ranking* ➡ ●

Advanced

⌁ ●Dialing from records (And more on **P.3-18**)

Call Time

Check estimated time of the most recent call and all calls.

1 ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Call*

2 *Call Time/Data Counter* ➜ ●

Tiil	15:05
Call Time	
Call Timers	
Data Counter	
Call Time Counter	
Minute Minder	

3 *Call Timers* ➜ ●

4 *Dialed Calls* or *Received Calls* ➜ ●

Resetting Dialed or Received Call Timer
After ④, 🖃 ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
Call Time Count
● Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. (On hold time is counted.)

3

Calling

Advanced

👆 ●Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls ●Checking accumulated data transmission volume ●Resetting Data Counter (And more on **P.3-18**)

3-10

Restrict Destinations

Allow calls to numbers saved in Phone Book or Call Permitted List only.

Limiting to Phone Book

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ●

2 *Restrict Destinations* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

> 15:05
> RestrictDestin.
> Specified Numbers
> Off
> Restrict Phonebook
> Do not

Restrict Destinations Menu

3 *Restrict Phonebook* ➡ ● ➡ *Do* ➡ ●

When Restrict Phonebook is *Do*
● Handset Code is required to add/edit Phone Book entries.

Limiting to Call Permitted List

Specifying Numbers

1 In Restrict Destinations menu, *Specified Numbers* ➡ ●

> 15:05
> Specified No.
> Switch On/Off
> Off
> Call Permitted Li…

Specified Numbers Menu

2 *Call Permitted List* ➡ ●

3 *<Empty>* ➡ ●

4 Enter phone number ➡ ●
● Repeat 3 - 4 to add phone numbers.

Activating Call Permitted List

1 In Specified Numbers menu, *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●

2 *On* ➡ ●

Advanced

⌂ ●Designating Call Permitted List numbers from saved information ●Editing Call Permitted List (**P.3-19**)
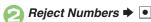
Reject Numbers

Reject calls from specified/unsaved numbers, calls without Caller ID, etc.

Rejecting Specified Numbers

Specifying Numbers

1. ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ◌ *Call* ➔ *Call Barring* ➔ ●

2. *Reject Numbers* ➔ ●

Reject Numbers Menu

3. *Specified Numbers* ➔ ●

Specified Numbers Menu

4. *Reject Numbers List* ➔ ●

5. *<Empty>* ➔ ●

6. Enter phone number ➔ ●
   ● Repeat 5 - 5 to add phone numbers.

Activating Rejection

1. In Specified Numbers menu, *Switch On/Off* ➔ ●

2. *On* ➔ ●
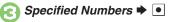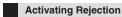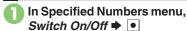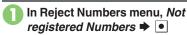
Rejecting Unsaved Numbers

1. In Reject Numbers menu, *Not registered Numbers* ➔ ●

2. *Reject* ➔ ●
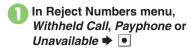
Saved Numbers Containing *P* (Pause)
● Calls from the number before *P* are rejected.

Rejecting Other Calls

Reject calls without Caller ID, calls from public phones or calls with undisplayable Caller ID.

1. In Reject Numbers menu, *Withheld Call*, *Payphone* or *Unavailable* ➔ ●

2. *Reject* ➔ ●

Advanced

⨎ ●Designating numbers to reject from saved information ●Editing Reject Numbers List ●Excluding rejected calls from Call Log (**P.3-19**)

Optional Services

Call Forwarding and Voicemail can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

Call Forwarding	Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number
Voicemail	Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access messages from handset/touch tone phones
Call Waiting*	Answer incoming calls or open another line during a call
Group Calling*	Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for teleconferencing
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions

*A separate contract is required.

Initiating Call Forwarding

Follow these steps to divert calls to a phone number saved in Phone Book after selected ring time (*No Answer* set): (Numbers starting with *1*, *00*, *0120* or *0990* cannot be saved.)

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ▢ *Call*

2. *Voicemail/Call Forwarding* ➡ ●

   ```
   ┌─────────────┐
   │      15:05  │
   │  Voicemail  │
   │ Voicemail   │
   │ Diverts     │
   │ Cancel All  │
   │ Status      │
   └─────────────┘
   ```

   Voicemail/Call Forwarding Menu

3. *Diverts* ➡ ●

4. Select call type ➡ ●

5. *No Answer* ➡ ●

6. *Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ●

7. Select phone number ➡ ●
   ● Omit ② if only one number is saved.

8. ●

9. Select ring time ➡ ●
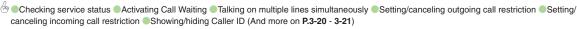
Diverting Calls without Handset Response
In ⑤, *Always* ➡ ● ➡ ⑥ - ⑨
Entering Forwarding Number Directly
In ⑥, *Enter Number* ➡ ● ➡ Enter phone number ➡ ● ➡ Select ring time ➡ ●

Advanced

🔧 ●Checking service status ●Activating Call Waiting ●Talking on multiple lines simultaneously ●Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction ●Setting/canceling incoming call restriction ●Showing/hiding Caller ID (And more on **P.3-20** - **3-21**)

3-13

Initiating Voicemail

Follow these steps to divert calls to Voicemail Center after selected ring time (*No Answer* set):

1. **In Voicemail/Call Forwarding menu,** *Voicemail* ➡ ● ➡ *Activate* ➡ ●

2. *No Answer* ➡ ● ➡ **Select ring time** ➡ ●

Diverting Calls without Handset Response
In ❷, *Always* ➡ ●

Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed in power off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ▣ *Call*

2. ‾out‾ *Missed Calls* ➡ ● ➡ ●
   - Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Playing Messages

1. **In Voicemail/Call Forwarding menu,** *Voicemail* ➡ ●

2. *Play Voicemail* ➡ ●
   - Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Deleting New Voicemail Message Indicator
In ❷, *Clear Indicator* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Canceling Call Forwarding/Voicemail

1. **In Voicemail/Call Forwarding menu,** *Cancel All* ➡ ●

2. *Yes* ➡ ●

Receiving a Call

■ Handling Incoming Calls

Rejecting calls	**Voice Call** When a call arrives, ▧ ➡ *Reject* ➡ ● **Video Call** When a call arrives, ▯
Placing calls on hold	When a call arrives, ⌕ ● Press ⌂ to answer the call on hold.
Answering with Headphones	When a call arrives, Long Press Call Button ● To end the call, Long Press Call Button.

■ Answer Phone

Recording messages when Answer Phone is inactive	When a Voice Call arrives, ▧ ➡ *Record Message* ➡ ●
Changing ring time	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Answer Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Answer Time* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●
Sampling outgoing message	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Answer Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Outgoing Message* ➡ ● ● Press ▨ to stop playback.
Muting Earpiece	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Answer Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Volume* ➡ ● ➡ *Silent* ➡ ●

■ Remote Monitor (Video Call)

Answering Video Calls automatically	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Remote Monitor* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Saving Numbers from Phone Book** *Auto Answer List* ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ▧ ➡ *Change* ➡ ● ➡ *From Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select phone number ➡ ● ● To enter a phone number directly, select *<Empty>* and press ●. **Saving Numbers from Call Log** *Auto Answer List* ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ▧ ➡ *Change* ➡ ● ➡ *From Call Log* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ● **Activating Remote Monitor** *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ ● ● When Remote Monitor is active, auto answer tone sounds even in Manner mode; cancel afterward. ● Calls cannot be answered automatically with handset closed.
Editing Auto Answer List	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Remote Monitor* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Answer List* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Editing Numbers** Select entry ➡ ● ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● **Deleting Entries** Select entry ➡ ▧ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Changing ring time	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Remote Monitor* ➡ ● ➡ *Answer Time* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●

Placing a Call

■ **Basic Operations**

Adjusting Earpiece Volume	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Earpiece Volume* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●
Sending/blocking Caller ID	After phone number entry, ▣ ➡ *Hide My ID* or *Caller ID* ➡ ●

■ **International Calls**
Example: Voice Calls

Placing calls by entering country code directly	⁕⁖⁕⁖ (*+ appears*) ➡ Enter country code ➡ Enter phone number with area code ➡ 🖅 ● Omit the first *0* of the area code except when calling Italy or some other countries. ● Pressing ⁕⁖⁕⁖ during a call does not enter *+*.
Using Roaming Dial Assistant to place international calls while outside Japan	Start Here Enter phone number with area code ➡ 🖅 ➡ See below ● Prompts do not appear for numbers with country codes. ● To disable Roaming Dial Assistant automatically after a call, press ▣ to check box next to *Don't use this tool again.*.
	Calling Japan (Landlines & Mobiles) *Dial to Japan* ➡ ● ➡ 🖅
	Calling Other Countries (Landlines & Mobiles) *Dial to Other Country* ➡ ● ➡ Select country ➡ ● ➡ 🖅

Disabling Roaming Dial Assistant	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Int'l Calling* ➡ ● ➡ *Roaming Dial Assistant* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ● When *Off*, handset dials the entered phone number as-is even while outside Japan.
Saving frequently used international prefix	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Int'l Calling* ➡ ● ➡ *Int'l Prefix* ➡ ● ➡ Enter prefix ➡ ●
Adding/changing/ deleting country codes	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Int'l Calling* ➡ ● ➡ *Country Code* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Changing (Selecting from Complete List) Select country/region ➡ ● ➡ *Change(Refer All List)* ➡ ● ➡ Select country/region ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Changing (Direct Entry) Select country/region ➡ ● ➡ *Change(Number Directly)* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ Enter country code ➡ ●
	Adding (Selecting from Complete List) *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ *Change(Refer All List)* ➡ ● ➡ Select country/region ➡ ●
	Adding (Direct Entry) *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ *Change(Number Directly)* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ Enter country code ➡ ●
	Deleting Select country ➡ ● ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

3

Calling

During a Call

Voice Call & Video Call

Muting Microphone	**Voice Call** **During a call, ⊡ (press again to cancel)** **Video Call** **During a call, ⊟ ▶ *Mute* ▶ ●** ● To cancel, select *Unmute*.
Activating/canceling Loudspeaker	**Activating Loudspeaker for Voice Call** **During a call, ● ▶ While message appears, ●** ● To cancel, press ●. **Canceling Loudspeaker for Video Call** **During a call, ⊡ (press again to activate)**
Switching sound output	**During a call, ⊟ ▶ *Transfer Audio* ▶ ● ▶ *To Phone* or *To Bluetooth* ▶ ●** ● For *To Bluetooth*, select a device and press ●.
Opening Phone Book	**During a call, ⊟ ▶ *Phone Book* ▶ ● ▶ Select entry ▶ ●** ● Press ⌨ twice to return to call window.
Saving Phone Book entries	**During a call, ⊟ ▶ *Phone Book* ▶ ● ▶ ⊟ ▶ *Add New Entry* ▶ ● ▶ Complete fields ▶ ⊡** ● Press ⌨ to return to call window.
Placing calls on hold	**During a call, ⊟ ▶ *Hold* ▶ ●** ● Subscription to Call Waiting or Group Calling is required to place Voice Calls on hold. ● To resume Voice Calls, press ⊟, select *Retrieve* and press ●. ● To resume Video Calls, press ⊡.

Voice Call Only

Improving Earpiece sound quality	**During a call, ⊡** ● To cancel Clear Tone, press ⊡ again.
Recording caller voice	**During a call, ⊟ ▶ *Record Caller Voice* ▶ ● ▶ Recording starts ▶ ● ▶ Recording ends** ● To play recorded messages, see **P.3-5** "Playing Messages."
Opening messages	**During a call, ⊟ ▶ *Messaging* ▶ ● ▶ Select Messaging folder ▶ ● ▶ Select folder ▶ ● ▶ Select message ▶ ●** ● Press ⌨ three times to return to call window.
Creating messages	**During a call, ⊟ ▶ *Messaging* ▶ ● ▶ *Create Message* or *Create New SMS* ▶ ● ▶ Complete message ▶ ⊡**
Sending saved touch tones	**During a call, ⊟ ▶ *Touch-Tone Signal List* ▶ ● ▶ Select number ▶ ⊟**
Sending touch tones via Phone Book	**During a call, ⊟ ▶ *Phone Book* ▶ ● ▶ Select entry ▶ ⊟ ▶ *Send Push Tone* ▶ ● ▶ Select phone number ▶ ●** ● Press ⊡ to return to call window.

Video Call Only

Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness	**During a call, ⊟ ▶ *Exposure* ▶ ● ▶ Adjust level ▶ ●** ● Alternative Image brightness is fixed.
Disabling touch tone sending	**During a call, ⊟ ▶ *Disable DTMF* ▶ ●**

3-17

3 Calling

Call Log

Dialing from records	**Calling Dialed Numbers (Redial)** ◌ ➡ Select record ➡ ⌕ ● To place Video Calls, press ▭ instead of ⌕, then select *Video Call* and press ●.
	Calling from Received Call Records ◌ ➡ Select record ➡ ⌕ ● To place Video Calls, press ▭ instead of ⌕, then select *Video Call* and press ●.
Sending messages from records	◌ or ◌ ➡ Select record ➡ ▭ ➡ *Create Message* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ▯
Saving Phone Book entries from records	◌ or ◌ ➡ Select record ➡ ▭ ➡ *Save to Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ ▯ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.
Opening Phone Book entries from records	◌ or ◌ ➡ Select record ➡ ▭ ➡ *Display Phone Book* ➡ ● ● Available when selected record (phone number) is saved in Phone Book.
Initiating S! Circle Talk from records	◌ or ◌ ➡ Select record ➡ ▭ ➡ *Call S! Circle Talk* ➡ ● ➡ ● ● Set Connection status to *Online* first.
Deleting records	**One Record** ◌ or ◌ ➡ Select record ➡ ▭ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Records ◌ or ◌ ➡ ▭ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Hiding Dialed Ranking	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings/Manage* ➡ ● ➡ *Call Log Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Hide Dialed Ranking* ➡ ●

Call Time & Data Communication

■ Call Time

Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Call* ➡ *Call Time/ Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Minute Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Hiding Call Time during calls	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Call* ➡ *Call Time/ Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Call Time Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Resetting Call Timers	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Call* ➡ *Call Time/ Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Call Timers* ➡ ● ➡ *Reset* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ Data Communication

Checking accumulated data transmission volume	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Call* ➡ *Call Time/ Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *All Data* ➡ ●
Resetting Data Counter	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Call* ➡ *Call Time/ Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Clear Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Restrict Destinations

Designating Call Permitted List numbers from saved information	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Restrict Destinations* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Specified Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Call Permitted List* ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ▯ ➡ See below
	From Phone Book *Ph.Book List* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select phone number ➡ ●
	From Call Log Records *From Call Log* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ●
	From S! Friend's Status Member List *From Member List* ➡ ● ➡ Select member ➡ ●
Editing Call Permitted List	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Restrict Destinations* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Specified Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Call Permitted List* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Editing Numbers Select number/name ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
	Deleting Numbers Select number/name ➡ ▯ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Reject Numbers

Designating numbers to reject from saved information	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Reject Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Specified Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Reject Numbers List* ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ▯ ➡ See below
	From Phone Book *Ph.Book List* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select phone number ➡ ●
	From Call Log Records *From Call Log* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ●
	From S! Friend's Status Member List *From Member List* ➡ ● ➡ Select member ➡ ●
Editing Reject Numbers List	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Reject Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Specified Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Reject Numbers List* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Editing Numbers Select number/name ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
	Deleting Numbers Select number/name ➡ ▯ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Excluding rejected calls from Call Log	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Reject Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Record on Call Log* ➡ ● ➡ *Do not Record* ➡ ●

Optional Services

■ **All Services**

Checking service status	● ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ ◌ *Call* ▶ Select service ▶ ● ▶ *Status* ▶ ● ● Available for *Voicemail/Call Forwarding*, *Caller ID* and *Call Waiting*.

■ **Call Waiting (Contract Required)**

Activating Call Waiting	● ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ ◌ *Call* ▶ *Call Waiting* ▶ ● ▶ *On* ▶ ●
Placing Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2	A tone sounds during a Voice Call ▶ ⌞⌝ ● Press ⌞⌝ to switch between lines. ● Press ☎ to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.

■ **Group Calling (Contract Required)**

Opening another line during a call	During a Voice Call, enter phone number ▶ ⌞⌝ ● To dial via Rakutomo Link, press ⌞⌝ during a Voice Call.
Switching between open lines (Swap Calls)	During a Voice Call, ⌞⌝ ● Press ⌞⌝ to switch between lines.
Talking on multiple lines simultaneously	While switching between lines, ▤ ▶ *Group Calling* ▶ ● ▶ *Conference All* ▶ ●
Switching to private conversation	During Group Calling, select number/name ▶ ● ▶ *Private* ▶ ●

■ **Call Barring**

When Call Forwarding or Voicemail is active, setting *All Outgoing Calls* or *All Incoming Calls* to *On* may not restrict Voice Calls/Video Calls. (Call Forwarding or Voicemail takes priority.)

Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction	[Start Here] ● ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ ◌ *Call* ▶ *Call Barring* ▶ ● ▶ *Bar Outgoing Calls* ▶ ● ▶ See below
	Setting Restriction Select restriction ▶ ● ▶ *On* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Center Access Code ▶ ● ● Outgoing SMS messages are also restricted. ● Outgoing S! Circle Talk requests are not affected. ● Following restrictions are available: ■ All Outgoing Calls: Restrict all non-emergency calls ■ Bar Int'l Call: Restrict all international calls ■ Local & Home Only: Restrict all international calls except to Japan
	Checking Restriction Status Select restriction ▶ ● ▶ *Status* ▶ ●
	Canceling All Restrictions *Cancel All* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Center Access Code ▶ ●

Setting/canceling incoming call restriction	Start Here ● ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ *Call* ⇒ *Call Barring* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Bar Incoming Calls* ⇒ ● ⇒ **See below**
	Setting Restriction **Select restriction ⇒ ● ⇒ *On* ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Center Access Code ⇒ ●** ● **Incoming SMS messages are also restricted.** ● Incoming S! Circle Talk requests are not affected. ● Following restrictions are available: ■ All Incoming Calls: Reject all calls ■ Bar if Abroad: Reject calls when outside Japan
	Checking Restriction Status **Select restriction ⇒ ● ⇒ *Status* ⇒ ●**
	Canceling All Restrictions ***Cancel All* ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Center Access Code ⇒ ●**

■ **Caller ID**

Showing/hiding Caller ID	● ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ *Call* ⇒ *Caller ID* ⇒ ● ⇒ *On* or *Off* ⇒ ●

Settings

■ **Voice Call**

Answering calls automatically when using Headphones	Start Here ● ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ *Call* ⇒ *Auto Answer* ⇒ ● ⇒ **See below**
	Activating Auto Answer *Switch On/Off* ⇒ ● ⇒ *On* ⇒ ● ● When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone even in Manner mode; cancel afterward.
	Changing Ring Time *Answer Time* ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter time ⇒ ●
Saving frequently used touch tones	● ⇒ *Phone* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Touch-Tone Signal List* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select number ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter name ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter digits ⇒ ● ● Send saved touch tones from Voice Call window via Options menu.
Saving touch tones for White Office	● ⇒ *Phone* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Touch-Tone Signal List* ⇒ ● ⇒ ▨ ⇒ *Change to White Office Tone* ⇒ ● ● Touch tones for White Office are saved to ①　- ⑤. ● When touch tones are already saved in ①　- ⑤, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Deleting touch tones	Start Here ● ⇒ *Phone* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Touch-Tone Signal List* ⇒ ● ⇒ **See below**
	One Entry **Select number ⇒ ▨ ⇒ *Delete* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Yes* ⇒ ●**
	All Entries ▨ ⇒ *Reset* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Yes* ⇒ ●

■ Video Call

Sending camera image when initiating Video Calls	● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⊡ *Call* ➜ *Video Call* ➜ ● ➜ *Camera Picture* ➜ ● ➜ *Default Image* ➜ ● ➜ *External Camera* ➜ ●
Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls	● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⊡ *Call* ➜ *Video Call* ➜ ● ➜ *Loudspeaker* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ●
Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls	● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⊡ *Call* ➜ *Video Call* ➜ ● ➜ *Mute Microphone* ➜ ● ➜ *On* ➜ ●
Changing Alternative Image that is sent when initiating Video Calls	● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⊡ *Call* ➜ *Video Call* ➜ ● ➜ *Camera Picture* ➜ ● ➜ *Alternative Image* ➜ ● ➜ Select folder ➜ ● ➜ Select file ➜ ● ➜ ●
Changing Incoming/Outgoing Image quality	● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⊡ *Call* ➜ *Video Call* ➜ ● ➜ *Incoming Picture* or *Outgoing Picture* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●
Setting image that is sent while call is on hold	● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⊡ *Call* ➜ *Video Call* ➜ ● ➜ *Hold Guidance Pict* ➜ ● ➜ Select folder ➜ ● ➜ Select file ➜ ● ➜ ● ● Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen image.
Setting Backlight status	● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⊡ *Call* ➜ *Video Call* ➜ ● ➜ *Backlight* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ● ● Selecting *Normal Setting* applies Display Backlight settings.

3

Calling

Receiving a Call

Cannot use Answer Phone or Record Caller Voice

- Answer Phone and Record Caller Voice are disabled when less than 12 seconds of recording capacity remain or 20 messages are recorded. Delete messages.
- Answer Phone and Record Caller Voice are not available for Video Calls.

Placing a Call

Cannot place call via Speed Dial

- Speed Dial is not available when Phone Book access is restricted by Application Lock.

Cannot place call

- Cancel Keypad Lock, Function Lock and Offline Mode, if active.

Call won't connect

- Did you include the area code or the first *0*? Dial the number including the area code or *0*.
- Handset may be out-of-range (*out* appears). Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

During a Call

Outgoing Image is distorted during Video Calls

- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.

Camera image switches to Alternative Image during Video Calls

- Prolonged camera use may cause camera area to heat up, resulting in automatic shutdown; wait a while and retry.

Conversation is hampered

- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise.
- Check Earpiece Volume when using Loudspeaker. Increasing Earpiece Volume may cause feedback/interference.

Call is choppy or cut off

- Network signal may be weak. Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.
- Battery may need to be charged or replaced. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

Clicking noise is heard during call

- Handset may be moving into another service area. Noise is heard when Network signal switches. This is normal.

Cannot hear other party's voice

- Earpiece Volume may be low. Increase Earpiece Volume (**P.3-3**).
- Sound output may be set to use handsfree device. Set Transfer Audio (**P.3-17**) to *To Phone*.

4

Messaging

Basics

Use the following messaging services.

SMS

Exchange up to 160 alphanumerics with SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail

Exchange up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible handsets, PCs, etc.; attach media files, etc.

Large Size Messages
Transmit messages of up to 2 MB including large images or multiple files; may incur high charges depending on subscribed price plan.

PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages. Use 001SH to handle PC Mail messages like SMS or S! Mail.

■ **Available Entry Items**

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachment
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available
PC Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

*SoftBank handset numbers only.

- A separate contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
- For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.15-22**).

Auto Retry Function

If recipient's handset is off/out-of-range, a sent message is saved in Server Mail Box and delivery attempted at regular intervals. (Undeliverable messages are deleted.)

Auto Resend

When Auto Resend is active, handset makes up to two attempts to send unsent messages automatically. Cancel to disable (**P.4-36**).

Customizing Handset Address

Change alphanumerics before @ of the default handset mail address.
For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.15-22**).

Changing Address

1 ⊠ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ●

2 *Address Settings* ▶ ●

● Handset connects to the Internet.
Select *English* and press ●, then
follow onscreen instructions.

Saving Address

When handset address is changed,
SoftBank Mobile sends new address
confirmation via S! Mail.

```
              Information
       ▭1 Message



   Clear  |   ●   |  Exit
```

To save new address to My Details, follow
these steps. (New address is effective
even if not saved.)

1 *Message* ▶ ●

```
  ᵀ⁴ᴵ⁴ ⊠           15:05
        Received Msg.
  Mail          2/   2
  ▣ Information
  ● Kimura Tetsuya
```

2 *Information* ▶ ●

3 *Yes* ▶ ●

```
  ᵀ⁴ᴵ⁴             15:05
        Edit My Details
  Last Name:
  Yamada
  First Name:
  Takako
  Reading-Last Name:
  Yamada
  Reading-FirstName:
  Takako
  Tel 1 My:
  ▣ 090392XXXX5
  Add Phone Number:
```

4 ⌨

4

Messaging

4-3

Sending S! Mail

Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book:

1 🖂 ➡ *Create Message* ➡ ●
When a PC Mail Account exists, select *S! Mail* and press ●.

📶	15:05 🔋
🖂S! Mail	0B

Add Recipient
Enter Subject
Attach File   Auto Art
<Enter Text>

S! Mail Composition Window

2 Select recipient field ➡ ●

3 *Phone Book* ➡ ●

4 Select entry ➡ ●

5 Select number or mail address ➡ ●
● Omit **5** if only one number or address is saved.
● When a mail address is entered, avoid using single-byte katakana in message text or subject; may not appear properly on recipient devices.

6 Select subject field ➡ ● ➡ Enter subject ➡ ●

7 Select message text field ➡ ●

📶	15:05 🔋
Message:	
a	0/30K

Text Entry Window

8 Enter message ➡ ●

📶	15:05 🔋
🖂S! Mail	526B

Ueda Mikio
Wedding
Attach File   Auto Art
Please bring a camera a
nd a tripod to Mr. Yama
moto and Miss Kawahashi
's wedding next Sunday.
I will bring a camcord
er.

S! Mail Composition Window

9 🔽 ➡ Transmission starts
● To cancel, press 🔽 during transmission.

Incoming Calls while Creating Message
● Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.
Personal Mode
● When recipient is entered via Phone Book, text entry window word suggestions change by recipient type.
Previewing Outgoing Message
After **8**, 🖂 ➡ *Preview Message* ➡ ●
Pictogram Entry
● In Pictogram List, press 🔅 to toggle Cross-Carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.
● Pictogram appearance may differ by carrier.
Specifying Line in Dual Mode
[S! Mail Composition Window] 🖂 ➡ *Switch Line* ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ●
Converting to Graphic Mail
After **8**, *Auto Art* ➡ ● ➡ Select decoration type ➡ ● ➡ 🔽 (Next) or 🖂 (Prev.) ➡ ● ➡ **8**
■ To cancel conversion, follow these steps before **8**:
🖂 ➡ *Cancel Arrangement* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
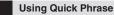
Advanced
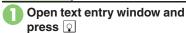
✍ ●Using other recipient entry methods ●Adding recipients ●Inserting signature automatically ●Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) ●Saving without sending
●Requesting delivery confirmation ●Designating/editing reply-to address (And more on **P.4-23** - **4-25**)
●Hiding progress bar while sending messages ●Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages ●Designating/editing reply-to address (And more on **P.4-36** - **4-37**)

Text Entry Assistance

Using Quick Phrase

Use fixed text (Japanese) or previously entered text for quick entry.
Quick Phrase Options:

Quick Phrase List	Shows Quick Reply text
Auto Registration	Shows initial portions of recently sent messages
Learning	Prioritizes recently used Quick Phrase text

1. **Open text entry window and press** $\boxed{Q}$

2. **Select text** ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$ ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$

3. $\boxed{Y}$ ➡ **Transmission starts**

Deleting Quick Phrase Text
In ②, select text ➡ $\boxed{\boxminus}$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$
■ Auto Registration and Learning entries can be deleted.

Disabling Quick Phrase (Options)
[Text Entry Window] $\boxed{\boxminus}$ ➡ *Quick Phrase* ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$ ➡ Select option ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$ ➡ *Off* ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$
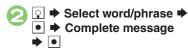
Using Opening Phrase Prediction (Japanese)

Words/phrases likely to be used to begin a message appear in suggestion list according to time of year and day.
(Opening Phrase Prediction)

1. **Open text entry window and Long Press** $\boxed{Y}$
   ● Long Press $\boxed{Y}$ to toggle Quick Phrase and Opening Phrase Prediction.

2. $\boxed{Q}$ ➡ **Select word/phrase** ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$ ➡ **Complete message** ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$

3. $\boxed{Y}$ ➡ **Transmission starts**

Disabling Opening Phrase Prediction
[Text Entry Window] $\boxed{\boxminus}$ ➡ *Input/ Conversion* ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$ ➡ *Pred. Beginning* ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$ ➡ *Off* ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$

Phrase Log (Japanese)

Portions of sent messages are saved automatically and appear in suggestion list as Previous Usage candidates; enter previously used phrase/sentence easily.
(Phrase Log)

Disabling Phrase Log
[Text Entry Window] $\boxed{\boxminus}$ ➡ *Input/ Conversion* ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$ ➡ *Phrase Log* ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$ ➡ *Off* ➡ $\boxed{\bullet}$

4

Messaging

4-5

Attaching Files

Send attachments to compatible handsets. Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail:

1. **In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, select attachment field ▶ ●**

2. *Picture* ▶ ● ▶ **Select folder ▶ ●**

3. **Select file ▶ ●**

File attached

4. ⊠ **▶ Transmission starts**

Attaching Non-Image Files
● In ❷, select a folder other than *Picture* and press ●, then select a file.
Attaching Multiple Files
  After ❸, *Attach (1)* ▶ ● ▶ *Attach File* ▶ ● ▶ *Picture* ▶ ● ▶ Select folder ▶ ● ▶ Select file ▶ ● ▶ ⊠ ▶ ❹
  ■ *X* in *Attach (X)* indicates the number of attached files.

Auto Image Resize

Large images may be automatically reduced to approximately 400 - 500 KB by default.
Change resize setting via Picture Auto Resize (**P.4-36**).

If Recipient Cannot Receive Large Messages (Up to 2 MB)
● Message may be truncated or attachments may be lost.

Sending Feeling Mail

Set emotion (happiness, sadness, etc.) to messages; recipient handset responds accordingly.

1. **In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, ⊠ ▶ *Feeling Settings* ▶ ●**

2. **Select category, e.g., *Happy/Glad* ▶ ●**

3. **Select item, e.g., *I Love You* ▶ ●**

4. ⊠ **▶ Transmission starts**

Canceling Feeling Mail
  [S! Mail Composition Window]
  Select subject field ▶ ● ▶ Select Pictogram ▶ ⊠ ▶ ●

Advanced

✎ ●Changing attached image size ●Set Auto Play File (And more on **P.4-26**)
●Limiting outgoing S! Mail message size ●Selecting size to which images are reduced when attaching (And more on **P.4-36** - **4-37**)

Sending Graphic Mail

Basic Procedure

Follow these steps to:

● Change font size
● Insert images
● Scroll text

1 ➡ *Create Message* ➡ ●

2 Select/enter recipient and subject (P.4-4)

3 Select message text field ➡ ●

Text Entry Window

4 ❦

Graphic Mail Window

5 *SIZE* ➡ ●

6 Select size ➡ ● ➡ Enter text

7 ❦ ➡ *IMAGE* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●

8 Select target location ➡ ● ➡ ⌧

9 ❦ ➡ *EFFECT* ➡ ●

10 *Scrolling* ➡ ●

11 Select direction ➡ ● ➡ Enter text

12 ● ➡ ❦ ➡ Transmission starts

Canceling Last Action
[Graphic Mail Window] *UNDO* ➡ ●
Canceling All Graphic Mail Settings
[Graphic Mail Window] *CANCEL* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Saving as Templates
After ⑪, ● ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Save as Template* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
■ Only the message text is saved.
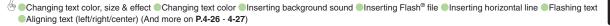
Advanced

❦ ●Changing text color, size & effect ●Changing text color ●Inserting background sound ●Inserting Flash® file ●Inserting horizontal line ●Flashing text ●Aligning text (left/right/center) (And more on **P.4-26** - **4-27**)

Using My Pictograms

My Pictograms are grouped by category; add or rename categories as needed.

- Source files are saved in Data Folder (My Pictograms).
- Save up to 1,000 additional My Pictograms on handset.
- Some preloaded My Pictograms appear in suggestion list when corresponding reading is typed.

1 In text entry window, $\boxed{\text{★}}$

- My Pictogram List appears. (Log appears if My Pictogram has been used.)
- Press $\boxed{\text{#}}$ or $\boxed{\text{★}}$ to open next or previous Category.

2 $\boxed{\text{A/a}}$

3 Select Category ➜ $\boxed{\bullet}$

My Pictogram List

- Press $\boxed{\text{Y}}$ or $\boxed{\text{回}}$ to open next or previous page, if any.

4 Select file ➜ $\boxed{\bullet}$

- To hide message, press $\boxed{\text{回}}$ ($\boxed{\checkmark}$).

5 $\boxed{\bullet}$ ➜ $\boxed{\text{CLEAR/BACK}}$

- List closes; enter text, add other decorative effects, etc.

6 Complete message ➜ $\boxed{\bullet}$ ➜ $\boxed{\text{Y}}$ ➜ **Transmission starts**

Moving/Copying My Pictograms
[My Pictogram List] Select file ➜ $\boxed{\text{Y}}$ (Long) ➜ *Move* or *Copy* ➜ $\boxed{\bullet}$ ➜ Press $\boxed{\text{#}}$ or $\boxed{\text{★}}$ to select Category ➜ Select target location ➜ $\boxed{\bullet}$
- My Pictograms can also be moved/copied within the same Category.

Deleting My Pictograms
[My Pictogram List] Select file ➜ $\boxed{\text{Y}}$ (Long) ➜ *Delete* ➜ $\boxed{\bullet}$ ➜ *Yes* ➜ $\boxed{\bullet}$
- Source files in Data Folder will be deleted.

Checking My Pictograms Individually
[My Pictogram List] Select file ➜ $\boxed{\text{Y}}$ (Long) ➜ *Preview* ➜ $\boxed{\bullet}$
- To return, press $\boxed{\text{CLEAR/BACK}}$.

Opening Data Folder (My Pictograms)
[My Pictogram List] Select file ➜ $\boxed{\text{Y}}$ (Long) ➜ *Access to Data Folder* ➜ $\boxed{\bullet}$

Clearing Entry Log
- Open Log then follow these steps:
Select file ➜ $\boxed{\text{Y}}$ (Long) ➜ *Delete This Log* ➜ $\boxed{\bullet}$ ➜ *Yes* ➜ $\boxed{\bullet}$

4

Messaging

Advanced

Converting from S! Mail

Convert S! Mail to Graphic Mail easily.

1 **In text entry window, enter message** ➜ 🖳 **(Long)**

2 **Select decoration type** ➜ ● ➜ ⚲ **(Next) or** 🖃 **(Prev.)**

> 📶﹒﹒﹒﹒﹒﹒﹒15:05﹒🔋
> ﹒﹒﹒﹒Preview
> Please bring a camera📷
> and a tripod to Mr. Yama
> moto and Miss Kawahashi'
> s wedding📷 next Sunday
> 📷. I will bring a camco
> rder. 📷

3 ●

4 ● ➜ ⚲ ➜ **Transmission starts**

Canceling Conversion
After **3**, 🖃 ➜ *Cancel Arrangement* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ **4**

Using Templates

Create Graphic Mail from templates.

1 🖃 ➜ *Templates* ➜ ●

2 **Select template** ➜ ●

3 **Complete message** ➜ ⚲ ➜ **Transmission starts**

Template Size
● Template size may change when used for creating messages.
Opening Templates from Text Entry Window (S! Mail)
[Text Entry Window] 🖃 ➜ *Launch Template* ➜ ● ➜ Select template ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ ⚲
■ If message text has already been entered, follow onscreen prompt to insert it.

4

Messaging

Advanced

🖐 ●Using custom decoration type (**P.4-27**)

Sending SMS

Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book:

1 ⊠ ➡ *Create New SMS* ➡ ●

SMS Composition Window

2 Select recipient field ➡ ●

3 *Phone Book* ➡ ●

4 Select entry ➡ ●

5 Select number ➡ ●
● Omit **5** if only one number is saved.

6 Select message text field ➡ ●

Text Entry Window
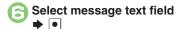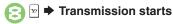
7 Enter message ➡ ●

SMS Composition Window

8 ☒ ➡ Transmission starts

Incoming Calls while Creating Message
● Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Personal Mode
● When recipient is entered via Phone Book, text entry window word suggestions change by recipient type.

When Message Text Exceeds Limit
● A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to S! Mail, choose *Yes* and press ●.

Specifying Line in Dual Mode
[SMS Composition Window] ⊠ ➡ *Switch Line* ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ●

Entering Pictograms Automatically
After **7**, *Auto Art* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ (Next) or ⊠ (Prev.) ➡ ● ➡ **8**

Using Quick Phrase
After **6**, ⌕ ➡ Select text ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ **8**

Advanced

✍ ●Using other recipient entry methods ●Adding recipients ●Using Speed Dial/Mail list ●Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) ●Saving without sending ●Requesting delivery confirmation ●Changing SMS Server storage limit for outgoing message (And more on **P.4-23** - **4-25**)
●Changing SMS Server sent message storage limit ●Changing SMS Server number ●Changing character encoding for composing messages (**P.4-39**)

4

Messaging

4-10

Restricting Outgoing Messages

Allow messaging to handset numbers/
addresses saved in Phone Book or
Permitted List only.

Limiting to Phone Book

1 ▫ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ●

2 *Create/Send Settings* ➔ ●

3 *Restrictions Setting* ➔ ● ➔
Enter Handset Code ➔ ●

SetRestrictMail
Individual Address
Off
Phonebook Entries
Off

Restrict Mail Menu

4 *Phonebook Entries* ➔ ● ➔
On ➔ ●

When Phonebook Entries is *On*

● Handset Code is required to add/edit
Phone Book entries.

Limiting to Permitted List

Specifying Mail Addresses

1 In Restrict Mail menu,
Individual Address ➔ ●

Individual Add.
Switch On/Off
Off
Permitted List

Individual Address Menu

2 *Permitted List* ➔ ●

3 *<Empty>* ➔ ●

4 Select method ➔ ● ➔
Select/enter address ➔ ●

● Repeat 3 - 4 to add mail addresses.

Activating Permitted List

1 In Individual Address menu,
Switch On/Off ➔ ●

2 *On* ➔ ●

4

Messaging

Advanced

⊕ ●Deleting Permitted List entries (**P.4-37**)

Opening & Replying

Opening New Messages

Information window opens for new mail.
See **P.4-22** to receive PC Mail.

```
        Information
    ✉ 1 Message
```

Important Message Retrieval Notes

- By default, if message size is around 1 MB or less, the complete message including attachments is retrieved in and outside Japan; transmission fees apply depending on subscribed price plan.
- Automatic message retrieval outside Japan may incur high charges.
- To retrieve only the initial portion of message text automatically, set Auto Settings to *Off*; retrieve complete message manually as needed.

Delivery Report

- Information window opens for Delivery Report. Follow these steps to open it:
  Delivery Report ➜ ● ➜ **Select message with report** ➜ ● ➜ 🖻

1 *Message* ➜ ●

```
📶 ✉           15:05 📶
     Received Msg.
Mail           3/   3
✉ Ueda Mikio
📧 Ueda Mikio
● Kimura Tetsuya
```

Message List

2 Select message ➜ ●

```
📶 ✉           15:05 📶
Received Msg. 0003
👤 Ueda Mikio
📧 How's it going?
🕐 10/01 15:05
I've just finished my wo
rk. How about you? I'll
be at the place at aroun
d 8 pm.
```

Message Window

Receiving Feeling Mail

- Small Light, Vibration and ringtone respond according to settings.

Attached Images

- Attached images open automatically.

Messages with Quiz

    Enter or select answer ➜ ●

- Message opens when the correct answer is entered or selected.

Animation View

- When a specific Pictogram is entered as the first character of subject or included in message text, corresponding animation appears in message window background.

Mail Notice

- Depending on the setting (e.g., Auto Settings is *Off*), Server sends initial portion of message text in each of the following cases:
  - The message was sent to multiple recipients
  - Files are attached to the message
- If message size exceeds 1 MB, Server sends only initial portion of message text regardless of Auto Settings status. (Approximate size appears in message text.)
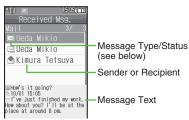
Advanced

4

Messaging

Window Description

Message List

- Message Type/Status (see below)
- Sender or Recipient
- Message Text

■ Message Type/Status
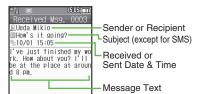
⊠	Unread	🗃	Mail Notice (remaining portion exists)
◆	Read	🖳	Unread Delivery Report
📩	Sent	📎	Attachments
📩	Failed	🔒	Protected
📩	Replied	⬆	Priority (High)
📩	Forwarded	⬇	Priority (Low)
📩	Send Reservation set	📼	USIM Card SMS

"SMS" or "PC" appears accordingly on indicators.

Message Window

- Sender or Recipient
- Subject (except for SMS)
- Received or Sent Date & Time
- Message Text

Press ⌦ or # to open other messages (higher or lower in message list).

Changing Font Size
[Message Window] 3 (Long) to enlarge or 1 (Long) to reduce

Replying to Messages

1 In message window, ⌨

- Original message text is quoted (except for SMS and Graphic Mail).

2 Complete message ➡ ⌨ ➡ Transmission starts

Replying to Messages Addressed to Multiple Recipients
After **1**, *To Sender* or *Reply All* ➡ ● ➡ **2**

Reply Assist Dictionary (メール返信アシスト辞書)
- When replying in Kanji (Hiragana) mode, this dictionary prioritizes original message words (katakana or alphanumerics) in suggestion list.

Auto Reply
- Handset sends a reply automatically when receiving messages from saved numbers or addresses in specified mode (Manner mode, etc.).

Advanced

◉ ●Saving attachments to Data Folder ●Saving to Phone Book ●Using linked info ●Looking up message text words in dictionaries ●Jumping to message top/bottom ●Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers ●Selecting mail type/quote option ●Opening received message for reference ●Replying quickly using fixed text ●Replying to messages automatically (And more on **P.4-28** - **4-30**)
●Selecting quote option (**P.4-37**)

4-13

Messaging

4

Customizing S! Mail Retrieval

Set complete S! Mail retrieval to manual (Server sends only initial portion of message text without attachments) or set handset to retrieve complete messages automatically by specifying sender type, mail address, etc.

Retrieving Messages Manually

1. ☒ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ●

2. *Receive Settings* ➡ ●

3. *Message Download* ➡ ●

> 15:05
> Message Download
> DL Size Limit
> Free (2MB)
> Auto Settings
> On (Up to 1MB)
> Condition (Auto)
> All Msg. (Not Include Spam ...
>
> Message Download Menu

4. *Auto Settings* ➡ ●

5. *Off* ➡ ●

Retrieving Complete S! Mail Automatically when Approximate Size is 300 KB or Less
In ⑤, *On(Up to 300KB)* ➡ ●
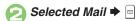
Restricting Automatic Retrieval

By Sender Type

1. In Message Download menu, *Condition(Auto)* ➡ ●

2. *Selected Mail* ➡ ☒

> 15:05
> Selected Mail
> ☑ Phone Number
> ☐ Saved Address
> ☐ My Folders
> ☐ Individual Addr...
>
> Selected Mail Menu

3. Select item ➡ ● (☐/☑)
   ➡ ☒
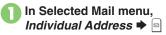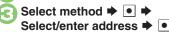
By Mail Address

Specify mail addresses or domains (alphanumerics after @ of mail addresses).

1. In Selected Mail menu, *Individual Address* ➡ ☒

2. Select blank entry ➡ ●

3. Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter address ➡ ●
   ● Repeat ❷ - ❸ to add mail addresses.

4. ☒

5. ● (☑) ➡ ☒

Restricting by Domain (Direct Entry)
[Selected Mail Menu] *Receive by the Domain* ➡ ☒ ➡ Select blank entry ➡ ● ➡ *Direct Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Enter domain ➡ ● ➡ ☒ ➡ ⑤

Advanced

🖑 ● Retrieving remaining portions (**P.4-28**)
● Retrieving all messages (including spam) automatically ● Deleting addresses/domains specified for complete message retrieval (**P.4-35**)

Managing & Using Messages

Messaging Folders

Messages are organized in folders by type.

```
Messaging                15:05
📨 Received Msg.          ──── Received Messages
📧 Create Message
📧 Retrieve New Ms...     ──── Incomplete/
📁 Drafts                      Unsent Messages
📁 Templates
📁 Sent Messages         ──── Sent Messages
📁 Unsent Messages       ──── Failed or Send
                               Reservation Messages
```

Auto Delete

- Oldest received/sent messages are deleted automatically to save new ones when memory is full. (Protect important messages to avoid unintentional deletion.)

Opening Help

- Follow these steps in folder list, message list or message window:
  ⊡ ➜ *Help* ➜ ●

When Failed Message is Saved

- A reminder message appears upon opening Messaging menu.

Checking Messages

1 ⊡ ➜ *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* ➜ ●
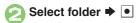
```
Received Msg.            15:05
📨 Mail
📁 Folder 1
📁 Folder 2
```
Folder List

- When a PC Mail Account exists, PC Mail folder (folder with the name specified in Account Name) appears.
- Select Mail folder or PC Mail folder and press ⊡ to hide/show sub folders. To open full message list, hide sub folders and press ●.

2 Select folder ➜ ●

```
Received Msg.            15:05
Mail              3/  3
🔵 Ueda Mikio
🔴 Ueda Mikio
🔵 Kimura Tetsuya
```
Message List

3 Select message ➜ ●

```
Received Msg. 0003       15:05
🔵 Ueda Mikio
📧 How's it going?
📅 10/01 15:05
I've just finished my wo
rk. How about you? I'll
be at the place at aroun
d 8 pm.
```
Message Window

Protecting Messages

1 In message list, select message ➜ ⊡ ➜ *Manage Msg.* ➜ ●

2 *Lock* ➜ ●
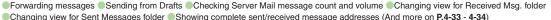
Canceling Protection
In **2**, *Unlock* ➜ ●

Advanced

📖 ●Selecting multiple messages ●Deleting messages ●Deleting all Server Mail directly from Server (And more on **P.4-30** - **4-31**)
●Forwarding messages ●Sending from Drafts ●Checking Server Mail message count and volume ●Changing view for Received Msg. folder
●Changing view for Sent Messages folder ●Showing complete sent/received message addresses (And more on **P.4-33** - **4-34**)

4

Messaging

Moving Messages to Spam Folder

¹**In message list, select message ➡ ⊠**
 ● For PC Mail, skip ahead to ³.

²*Spam Measures Operation* **➡ ●**

³*Go to Spam Measures Folder.* **➡ ●**
 ● If a confirmation appears, choose *Yes* or *No* and press ●. Choose *Yes* to proceed with Sort Spam Mail settings; follow onscreen instructions.

Searching Messages

Search messages by message text, sender/recipient address, etc.

¹**⊠ ➡ *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* ➡ ●**

²**⊠ ➡ *Search* ➡ ●**

³*Search All Msg.* **➡ ●**

⁴**Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter address or text ➡ ●**

Searching by Folder
 In ², select folder ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ *Search Folder* ➡ ● ➡ ④
Searching Message Text
 ● Follow these steps to find specific words/ phrases; limit search by character type.
  [Message Window] ⊠ ➡ *Search Text* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●
  ■ Press ⊠ or ⊠ to jump to next/previous search result.

Hiding Folders

Hide Received Msg./Sent Message folder to require Handset Code for access to the folder and messages within.
Chat Folders are not affected.

¹**⊠ ➡ *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* ➡ ●**

²**Select folder ➡ ⊠**

³*Set Secret* **➡ ● ➡ ●**

Accessing Secret Folders
 After ①, ⊠ ➡ *Unlock Temporarily* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Advanced

₴ ●Moving messages manually ●Renaming folders ●Deleting folders ●Deleting Spam Folder messages ●Adding folders ●Moving folders ●Changing status of all messages within folders to read ●Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders ●Canceling Secret (**P.4-31** - **4-32**)

Sorting Messages

Sorting into Designated Folders

Sort messages by sender/recipient or partially matching text in subject or SMS message text.

1. ⊠ ➔ *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* ➔ ●

2. Select target folder ➔ ⊠

3. *My Folders* ➔ ● ➔ Select blank entry ➔ ●

   ```
   Auto Sort Keys
   Sender
   Sender(Domain)
   Subject
   ```

4. *Sender* (*Recipient* for Sent Messages) ➔ ●

5. Select method ➔ ● ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔ ●

6. ⊠ ➔ Saved

Sorting by Domain (Direct Entry)
   In ❹, *Sender(Domain)* (*Recipient(Domain)* for Sent Messages) ➔ ● ➔ *Direct Entry* ➔ ● ➔ Enter domain ➔ ● ➔ ❺

Sorting by Part of Subject/SMS Message Text
   In ❹, *Subject* ➔ ● ➔ Enter text ➔ ● ➔ ❺

Filtering Spam

Follow these steps to filter messages from handset numbers/addresses not saved in Phone Book into Spam Folder:
(Alternatively, set sort keys to filter messages.)

1. ⊠ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Receive Settings* ➔ ●

2. *Spam Mail Settings* ➔ ●

3. *Sort Spam Mail* ➔ ●

4. *Unregistered(Mobile)* ➔ ● (☑)

5. ⊠ ➔ ●

Exempting Messages from Filtering
   After ❹, *Permitted List(Common)* ➔ ⊠ ➔ Select blank entry ➔ ● ➔ Select key ➔ ● ➔ Select/enter number/address/subject ➔ ● ➔ ⊠ ➔ ● (☑) ➔ ❺

When a PC Mail Account Exists
● Filter PC Mail messages from addresses not saved in Phone Book.

Advanced

🖐 ●Re-sorting messages ●Sorting spam by setting keys ●Editing/deleting sort keys (**P.4-32**)

Using Chat Folders
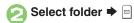
Organize messages exchanged between handset and Chat members' handsets.
To hide messages, set Chat Folder to Secret.

Saving Members

1 ⊠ ➡ *Chat Folder* ➡ ●

```
📶                    15:05📶
        Chat Folder
📁 Group①
📂 Group②
📂 Group③
```
Chat Folder List

2 Select folder ➡ ⊠

3 *Add New Member* ➡ ●

4 Select blank entry ➡ ●
● Select saved member to edit number/address.

5 Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ ●
● Repeat 4 - 5 to add members.

6 ⊠ ➡ **Saved**

Changing Members
In 4, select member ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Change Member* ➡ ● ➡ From 5
Deleting Members
In 4, select member ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ 6

Opening Chat Folders

1 In Chat Folder list, select folder ➡ ●

2 Select message ➡ ●

Advanced

⚙ ●Deleting folders ●Deleting all messages ●Resetting Chat Folders (**P.4-33**)

Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail

Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time.
Save target recipients to Phone Book first.

1 ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ●

2 *Mail Groups* ➡ ●

Mail Groups
⇨ <Add New Group>

Mail Group Entry Window

3 *<Add New Group>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

4 Select Group ➡ ●

5 *<Assign New Entry>* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ●

Kondo Koichi
☎ 03123XXXX2
🖥 090392XXXX3
📧 aaa@xxx.yyy

6 **Select number or mail address** ➡ ●

Circle
<Assign New Entry>

Kondo Koichi
🖥 090392XXXX3
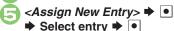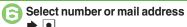
- Omit 6 if only one number or address is saved.
- Repeat 5 - 6 to add members.

7 ☒ ➡ **Saved**

Advanced

⚙ ●Renaming Mail Groups ●Deleting Mail Groups/Group members ●Changing Mail Group members (**P.4-33**)

PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages.

Save PC mail account information to handset:
- User Name
- Password
- Mail Address
- Incoming Mail Server
- Outgoing Mail Server

Retrieve mail delivered to ISP or Yahoo! accounts.
- Alternatively, use automatic message retrieval option.

Local ISP

SBM Server

Yahoo! Japan

SH
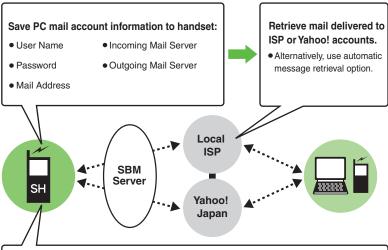
Messages are saved in unique folders; reply to/send messages via PC mail account addresses.

PC Mail Folder

- Handle messages (sort, etc.) like S! Mail or SMS. (Unavailable functions do not appear in Options menu and some may appear under different names.)

Important PC Mail Usage Notes
- Receiving PC Mail for the first time after PC Mail Account setup may incur high charges due to large-volume packet transmissions.
- Setting handset to retrieve PC Mail automatically may incur high packet transmission fees; remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.
- Other functions may slow while handset is checking for new messages.
- Checking for new messages may incur packet transmission fees even when none exists.
- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.
- When messages sent from handset to PC mail account are retrieved by handset (then opened, replied with quotes, forwarded, etc.), included Pictograms may not appear or may appear as different characters.

4-20

PC Mail Account Setup

- Proceed with setup according to information supplied by ISP.
- PC Mail services may be unavailable depending on the services, settings or contract details for your PC mail account. Confirm compatibility with POP/SMTP message retrieval/transmission via e-mail software beforehand.

Mandatory Items for Retrieval
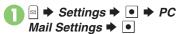
User Name	Required to connect to incoming mail server
Password	Required to connect to incoming mail server
ReceivingServer	Incoming mail server address

Mandatory Items for Transmission

Mail Address	Address to use PC Mail
Sender Server	Outgoing mail server address

Setting Other Items
- Edit information as needed; for description, select an item and press ⊠.

1 ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ●

PC Mail Settings
PC Mail Account

PC Mail DL
Beginning Only

2 *PC Mail Account* ➡ ●

3 *<Empty>* ➡ ●

4 *Account Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

5 *Set Receiving* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select/ enter item ➡ ● ➡ ⊻
- User Name, Password and ReceivingServer are mandatory.
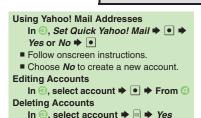
6 *Set Sending* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter item ➡ ●
- Mail Address and Sender Server are mandatory.

7 ⊻ ➡ ⊻ ➡ ●
- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Using Yahoo! Mail Addresses
   In **3**, *Set Quick Yahoo! Mail* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●
   ■ Follow onscreen instructions.
   ■ Choose *No* to create a new account.
Editing Accounts
   In **3**, select account ➡ ● ➡ From **4**
Deleting Accounts
   In **3**, select account ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Saving User ID & Password for Transmission
- If User Name and Password are unset Set Receiving items are automatically used for SMTP authentication. Follow these steps if ISP requires User Name and Password:
   In **6**, *Set Sending* ➡ ● ➡ *Sender Auth.* ➡ ● ➡ *SMTP Auth.* ➡ ⊠ ➡ *User Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Password* ➡ ● ➡ Enter password ➡ ● ➡ ⊻ ➡ ⊞ ➡ **7**

Retrieving New PC Mail

Retrieve new messages from created accounts. If message count is high, some may not be received on the first attempt.

1 ⊠ ➜ ⊠

2 ⊠

3 Select PC Mail folder ➜ ● ➜ Select message ➜ ●

```
<to be continued> 1KB
Options        More
```
Message Window

- Press ⊻ to retrieve full message.
- Message window is similar to that of S! Mail.

Deleting Messages
[Message List] Select message ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Delete* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

Retrieving Messages by Account
After **1**, select account ➜ ● ➜ **3**
■ Omit **3** if only one message is retrieved.

Checking Received PC Mail

1 ⊠ ➜ *Received Msg.* ➜ ● ➜ Select folder ➜ ●
- Message list appears. Message list is similar to that of S! Mail.

2 Select message ➜ ●
- Message window opens.

Replying to PC Mail

1 In message window, ⊻
- PC Mail Composition window opens.
- Original message text is quoted (except for HTML messages).

2 Complete message ➜ ⊻ ➜ Transmission starts

Replying without Quoting Original Message Text
[Message Window] ⊠ ➜ *Reply* ➜ ● ➜ *PC Mail* ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ ⊻

Changing Account for Outgoing Messages
[PC Mail Composition Window]
Select recipient field ➜ ● ➜ *From:* ➜ ● ➜ Select account ➜ ●

Sending PC Mail

Follow these steps to create and send PC Mail:

1 ⊠ ➜ *Create Message* ➜ ●

2 Select PC Mail Account ➜ ●

3 Complete message ➜ ⊻ ➜ Transmission starts

Converting to S! Mail
After **2**, ⊠ ➜ *Convert to S! Mail* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

Note
- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.

Advanced

Creating/Sending Messages

■ Recipient

Using other recipient entry methods	**In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ▶ ● ▶ Select method ▶ ● ▶ Select/ enter number/address ▶ ●**
Adding recipients	**In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ▶ ● ▶ *Add Recipient* ▶ ● ▶ Select method ▶ ● ▶ Select/enter number/address ▶ ● ▶ ⌇**
Switching recipient status (To, Cc and Bcc)	**In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ▶ ● ▶ Select recipient ▶ ▤ ▶ Select status ▶ ● ▶ ⌇** ● Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.
Using Rakutomo Link	**Start Here ↱ ▶ ◌ Select number ▶ See below** **Saving Recipients (from Phone Book)** ● ▶ *Refer Phone Book* ▶ ● ▶ Select entry ▶ ● ▶ ⌇ **Creating Messages** *Create Message* ▶ ● ● When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select *S! Mail* or *SMS* and press ●.

Using Speed Dial/ Mail list	**Saving Recipients** ▤ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *Speed Dial/Mail* ▶ ● ▶ *<Empty>* ▶ ● ▶ Select entry ▶ ● ▶ Select number or mail address ▶ ● ▶ *Do not Assign* ▶ ● ▶ ⌇ **Creating Messages** In Standby, ⓪ - ⑨⑨ (Speed Dial/Mail entry number) ▶ ▤ ● When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select *S! Mail* or *SMS* and press ●.
Editing/deleting recipients	**Start Here In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ▶ ● ▶ See below** **Editing Recipients** Select recipient ▶ ● ▶ Edit ▶ ● ▶ ⌇ **Deleting a Recipient** Select recipient ▶ ▤ ▶ *Delete* ▶ ● ▶ ⌇ **Deleting All Recipients** Select recipient ▶ ▤ ▶ *Delete All* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ● ▶ ⌇
Editing/removing Rakutomo Link entries	**Start Here ↱ ▶ ◌ Select entry ▶ ▤ ▶ See below** **Editing Entries** *Change Registered Contents* ▶ ● ▶ *Change the Use Address* ▶ ● ▶ *Mail address:* ▶ ● ▶ Select new number/address ▶ ● ▶ ⌇ **Removing Entries** *Remove* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●

4

Messaging

4-23

	Start Here ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Speed Dial/Mail* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
Editing Speed Dial/ Mail list	**Editing Entries** Select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Change* ➡ ● ➡ *Mail address:* ➡ ● ➡ Select new number/address ➡ ● ➡ ☑
	Removing Entries Select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Remove Selected* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Removing All Entries ⊠ ➡ *Remove All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ **Message Text**

Inserting signature automatically	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Create/Send Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Signature* ➡ ● ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Enter signature ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Insert* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Signature is inserted above message text when forwarding messages or quoting original message text in replies. ● Not available for SMS.
Inserting signature manually	In text entry window, ⊠ ➡ *Insert/Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ *Signature* ➡ ● ● Signature is inserted below message text.
Inserting ASCII Art	In text entry window, ⊠ ➡ *Call ASCII Art* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ●
Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail)	In Mail Composition window, ⊠ ➡ *Change to SMS* or *Convert to S! Mail* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ **Save, Send Reservation & Sent Cancel**

Saving without sending	After completing message, ⊠ ➡ *Save to Drafts* ➡ ●
Sending automatically later	Start Here After completing message, ⊠ ➡ *Send Reservation* ➡ ● ➡ **See below** **Auto Send when Signal Returns** *Within the Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Designating Send Date/Time (within 30 days)** *Date & Time* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date/time ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Canceling sent S! Mail	⊠ ➡ *Sent Messages* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Set Sent Cancel* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.

■ **Messaging Settings**
● For SMS, only Delivery Report and Expiry Time are available.
● For PC Mail, only Reply to Settings and Priority are available.

Requesting delivery confirmation	In Mail Composition window, ⊠ ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Delivery Report* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Delivery Report arrives when message is delivered. ● Open sent message to check delivery status indicator: ■ 🔳: Delivered, 🔳: Unknown, 🔳: Failed ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.
Setting priority	In Mail Composition window, ⊠ ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Priority* ➡ ● ➡ Select priority ➡ ●
Setting message to be deleted from recipient handset once read	In Mail Composition window, ⊠ ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Auto Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.

4

Messaging

4-24

Adding a reply request	In Mail Composition window, ⊠ ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Reply Request* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.	**Editing assigned Quiz**	In Mail Composition window, ⊠ ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Quiz* ➡ ● ➡ *Edit Question* ➡ ● ➡ **Edit question/options/answer** ➡ ⊠ (⊠ **again after editing options**) ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.
Restricting forward/delete	In Mail Composition window, ⊠ ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Forward NG* or *Delete NG* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.	**Lowering size limit for outgoing S! Mail message**	In Mail Composition window, ⊠ ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Create Msg. Size* ➡ ● ➡ *300KB* ➡ ●
Locking message with Quiz	**Start Here** In Mail Composition window, ⊠ ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Quiz* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ **See below** ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.	**Designating/ editing reply-to address**	**Start Here** In Mail Composition window, ⊠ ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Reply to Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Using Preset Questions (Multiple Choice) Select question ➡ ● ➡ *Selection* ➡ ● ➡ Select number ➡ ● ➡ Enter/edit option ➡ ● ➡ Enter/edit all options ➡ Select answer ➡ ⅀ ➡ ⊠ ➡ ⊠ ● May be unavailable for some questions.		**Designating** *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter address ➡ ●
			Editing *Edit Address* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
	Using Preset Questions (Exact Answer Entry) Select question ➡ ● ➡ *Match Characters* ➡ ● ➡ Enter answer ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ● May be unavailable for some questions.	**Changing SMS Server storage limit for outgoing message**	In Mail Composition window, ⊠ ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Expiry Time* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● Available for SMS only.
	Creating Custom Quiz (Multiple Choice) *<Create Original>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter question ➡ ● ➡ *Selection* ➡ ● ➡ Select number ➡ ● ➡ Enter option ➡ ● ➡ Complete entry ➡ Select answer ➡ ⅀ ➡ ⊠ ➡ ⊠		
	Creating Custom Quiz (Exact Answer Entry) *<Create Original>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter question ➡ ● ➡ *Match Characters* ➡ ● ➡ Enter answer ➡ ● ➡ ⊠		

4

Messaging

■ **Attachments**

Changing attached image size	Select attached file ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Resize Picture* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ● ● May be unavailable for some images.
Capturing/ recording and attaching	**Start Here** In Mail Composition window, select attachment field ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Still Images *Picture* ➡ ● ➡ *Take Picture* ➡ ● ➡ ● to shoot ➡ ●
	Video *Video* ➡ ● ➡ *Record Video* ➡ ● ➡ ● to start recording ➡ ● to stop ➡ *Accept* ➡ ● ➡ Select storage media ➡ ●
	Sounds *Sound* ➡ ● ➡ *Record Voice* ➡ ● ➡ ● to start recording ➡ ● to stop ➡ *Accept* ➡ ● ➡ Select storage media ➡ ●
Set Auto Play File	Select attached file ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Set Auto Play File* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ *Enter Message* ➡ ● ➡ Enter comment ➡ ● ➡ 🗝 ➡ 🗝 ● Not available for PC Mail.

■ **Graphic Mail**

Changing text color, size & effect	In text entry window, 🗝 ➡ ⊡ ➡ Select start point ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ● ➡ *COLOR*, *SIZE* or *EFFECT* ➡ ● ➡ Set ➡ ●
Changing text color	In text entry window, 🗝 ➡ *COLOR* ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● ➡ Enter text
Inserting background sound	**Start Here** In text entry window, 🗝 ➡ *INSERT* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Inserting *BGM Sound* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●
	Deleting *Delete BGM* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Inserting Flash® file	In text entry window, 🗝 ➡ *INSERT* ➡ ● ➡ *Flash* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●
Previewing Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file, ⊡ ➡ *Preview* ➡ ● ● When Graphic Mail window is open, press 🗝 first.
Deleting Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file, move cursor before Flash® icon ➡ 🗝 ● When Graphic Mail window is open, press 🗝 first.

4

Messaging

Inserting horizontal line	In text entry window, ⊠ ➡ *INSERT* ➡ ● ➡ *Line* ➡ ●
Flashing text	[Start Here] In text entry window, ⊠ ➡ See below **Flashing** *EFFECT* ➡ ● ➡ *Blink* ➡ ● ➡ *Blink On* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text **Canceling** ▣ ➡ Select start point ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ● ➡ *EFFECT* ➡ ● ➡ *Blink* ➡ ● ➡ *Blink Off* ➡ ●
Aligning text (left/ right/center)	In text entry window, ⊠ ➡ *EFFECT* ➡ ● ➡ *Alignment* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ Enter text
Using custom decoration type	[Start Here] In text entry window, enter message ➡ ▣ (Long) ➡ *Original* ➡ ▣ ➡ See below **Disabling My Pictograms** *Pictograms Type* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictograms* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ ⊠ (Next) or ▣ (Prev.) ➡ ● **Inserting Pictograms/My Pictograms at the End of Text Only** *Insert Pictograms Position* ➡ ● ➡ *Page Bottom* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ ⊠ (Next) or ▣ (Prev.) ➡ ● **Changing Pictogram/My Pictogram Quantity** *Insert Pictograms Volume* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ ⊠ (Next) or ▣ (Prev.) ➡ ● **Enabling/Disabling Text Color/Size & Background Color Auto Change** *Change Font Color*, *Change Font Size* or *Change Background Color* ➡ ● ➡ *Do* or *Do not* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ ⊠ (Next) or ▣ (Prev.) ➡ ● ● Not available when *Pictograms Type* is set to *Pictograms*.

■ **My Pictograms**

Creating Categories	In text entry window, ✱ ➡ ▣ ➡ *<Add New Entry>* ➡ ● ➡ *Folder Name:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Reading 1:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter reading ➡ ● ➡ *Icon:* ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ● Created Categories appear in suggestion list when corresponding reading is typed.
Editing Categories	In text entry window, ✱ ➡ ▣ ➡ Select Category ➡ ▣ ➡ *Edit Category Name* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ● ➡ ⊠
Changing Category order	In text entry window, ✱ ➡ ▣ ➡ Select Category ➡ ▣ ➡ *Relocate Category* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ●
Opening Category properties	In text entry window, ✱ ➡ ▣ ➡ Select Category ➡ ▣ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
Deleting Categories	In text entry window, ✱ ➡ ▣ ➡ Select Category ➡ ▣ ➡ *Delete Category* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

4

Messaging

4-27

Receiving/Opening Messages

■ Receiving

Accessing new mail out of Standby	⊠ (Long)
Retrieving new S! Mail manually	⊠ ➜ ⊠ ● When a PC Mail Account exists, select *S! Mail* and press ●. ● Retrieve messages missed while handset is out-of-range.
Retrieving Server Mail list	⊠ ➜ *Server Mail Box* ➜ ● ➜ *Mail List* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
Retrieving remaining portions	**Via Mail Notice** **In message list, select Mail Notice** ➜ ● ➜ Y ● If retrieve size options appear, select one and press ●. **Via Server Mail List** ⊠ ➜ *Server Mail Box* ➜ ● ➜ *Mail List* ➜ ● ➜ **Select message** ➜ ● ● If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Retrieving all Server Mail	Start Here ⊠ ➜ *Server Mail Box* ➜ ● ➜ **See below** **Directly from Server** *Retrieve All* ➜ ● **Via Server Mail List** *Mail List* ➜ ● ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Retrieve All* ➜ ● ● If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●.

■ Opening

Viewing new messages on Sub Display	▣ ➜ ▣ ● Available with handset closed.

■ Message Window

Saving attachments to Data Folder	**In message window, select file** ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Save to Data Folder* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter name** ➜ ● ➜ *Save here* ➜ ● ● For Graphic Mail templates, *Save as Template* appears. (Omit file name entry step.)
Installing attached widgets	**In message window, select file** ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Install Attach* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter name** ➜ ●
Using attachments	Start Here **In message window, select file** ➜ ⊠ ➜ **See below** **As Wallpaper** *Set as Wallpaper* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter name** ➜ ● ➜ *Save here* ➜ ● ● For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts. **As Ringtone/Ringvideo** *Set as Ringtone* or *Set as Ring Video* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter name** ➜ ● ➜ *Save here* ➜ ● ➜ **Select item** ➜ ● ● For *For New Message* or *For New PC Mail*, enter ring time and press ●.

Playing slides	In message window, <kbd>⊠</kbd> ➡ *Slide Play* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ● Slides are specially formatted messages consisting of message text with attachments.		**Looking up message text words in dictionaries**	In message window, <kbd>⊠</kbd> ➡ *Copy & Search Dict.* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Select first character ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Highlight text range ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Select dictionary ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Search* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Select word ➡ <kbd>●</kbd>
Saving to Phone Book	**Saving Sender Address** In message window, <kbd>⊠</kbd> ➡ *Save Address* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Select number or mail address ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Complete other fields ➡ <kbd>ʏ</kbd> ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.		**Jumping to message top/bottom**	In message window, <kbd>⊠</kbd> ➡ *View Settings* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Scroll Jump* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Jump to Top* or *Jump to Bottom* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd>
			Deleting attachments	In message window, select file ➡ <kbd>⊠</kbd> ➡ *Remove File* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Yes* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd>
	Saving Linked Info In message window, select number or mail address ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Save to Phone Book* or *Save Address* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Complete other fields ➡ <kbd>ʏ</kbd> ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.		**Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers**	In message window, <kbd>⊠</kbd> ➡ *Report Spam* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ <kbd>ʏ</kbd> ● Signature is not inserted automatically. ● Not available for PC Mail.
			Saving attachments within Graphic Mail	In Graphic Mail message window, <kbd>⊠</kbd> ➡ *Save Items* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Select file ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Enter name ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Save here* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd>
Using linked info	**Dialing Numbers** In message window, select number ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Call* or *Video Call* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd>			
	Sending Messages In message window, select number or mail address ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Create Message* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Complete message ➡ <kbd>ʏ</kbd> ● For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step.		**Saving My Pictograms within Graphic Mail**	<kbd>Start Here</kbd> In Graphic Mail message window, <kbd>⊠</kbd> ➡ *Save Items* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Save My Pictograms* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ See below
				All Files *Save All* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Select folder ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Save here* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd>
	Accessing Websites In message window, select URL ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Yes* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ● Choose *Select Br.* to select a browser.			**One File** Select file ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Enter name ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Select folder ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Save here* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd>
Copying text	<kbd>Start Here</kbd> In message window, <kbd>⊠</kbd> ➡ *Copy* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ See below			**Selected Files** <kbd>ʏ</kbd> ➡ Select file ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> (☐/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ <kbd>ʏ</kbd> ➡ Select folder ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Save here* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd>
	Sender/Recipient Number/Address *Address* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Select number/address ➡ <kbd>●</kbd>		**Saving Graphic Mail as templates**	In Graphic Mail message window, <kbd>⊠</kbd> ➡ *Save as Template* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Enter name ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ *Save here* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd>
	Subject or Message Text *Subject* or *Message Text* ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Select first character ➡ <kbd>●</kbd> ➡ Highlight text range ➡ <kbd>●</kbd>			

4

Messaging

4

Messaging

■ **Replying**

Selecting mail type/quote option	In message window, B ➡ *Reply* ➡ % ➡ Select type/option ➡ % ➡ Complete message ➡ A
Opening received message for reference	In message window, B ➡ *Rep. with View* ➡ % ➡ Select option ➡ % ➡ Complete message ➡ A
Replying quickly using fixed text	**Editing Quick Reply Text** B ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Create/Send Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Reply Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Set Quick Reply* ➡ % ➡ Select text ➡ % ➡ *Edit* ➡ % **Using Quick Reply** In message window, A (Long) ➡ Select text ➡ %
Replying to messages automatically	Start Here B ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Create/Send Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Reply Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Auto Reply* ➡ % ➡ See below **Saving Recipients** *Address Setting* ➡ % ➡ Select blank entry ➡ % ➡ Select method ➡ % ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ % ➡ Select mode ➡ % (□/✓) ➡ A ➡ A ● Select saved recipient and press % to edit number/address. **Editing Reply Text** *Reply Message* ➡ % ➡ Select mode ➡ % ➡ Enter text ➡ % ● Edit text for each mode. **Activating Auto Reply** *Switch On/Off* ➡ % ➡ *On* ➡ % ● Replies are sent via S! Mail. ● Replies are sent to the same sender only once after each time Auto Reply is activated. ● Auto Reply is not available for PC Mail or outside Japan.

Managing Messages

■ **Message List**

Selecting multiple messages	**Selecting** In message list, A ➡ Select message ➡ % (✓) ● To uncheck, press % again. **Selecting Up to 50 Messages at Once** In message list, B ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ % ➡ *Check in Block* ➡ % **Unchecking All** In message list with message checked (✓), B ➡ *Uncheck All* ➡ %
Color-tagging messages	In message list, select message ➡ B ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ % ➡ *Color Label* ➡ % ➡ Select color ➡ %
Sorting messages	In message list, B ➡ *View Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Sort* ➡ % ➡ Select option ➡ %
Opening sender/ recipient details	In message list, select message ➡ B ➡ *View Mail Address* ➡ % ➡ Select sender or recipient ➡ %
Checking memory status	B ➡ *Memory Status* ➡ % ➡ Select item ➡ % ● Press A to check memory status by service (SMS & S! Mail or PC Mail). ● USIM Card SMS message count and volume do not appear.
Opening properties	In message list, select message ➡ B ➡ *Message Details* ➡ %
Changing Graphic Mail template name display	B ➡ *Templates* ➡ % ➡ B ➡ *Item Displayed* ➡ % ➡ Select item ➡ %

Saving SMS messages to USIM Card	**In message list, select SMS message** ➜ B ➜ *Manage Msg.* ➜ % ➜ *Move to USIM* ➜ % ● Not available for some SMS messages.
Changing received message status (read/unread)	**In message list, select message** ➜ B ➜ *Manage Msg.* ➜ % ➜ *Switch to Unread* or *Switch to Read* ➜ %

■ Deleting Messages

Deleting messages	**One Message** **In message list, select message** ➜ B ➜ *Delete* ➜ % ➜ *Yes* ➜ % ● Alternatively, delete an open message. **All Messages** **In message list,** B ➜ *Delete All* ➜ % ➜ *Delete All* or *Except Locked Msg.* ➜ % ➜ *Yes* ➜ % **All Messages in Spam Folder** **In message list (Spam Folder),** B ➜ *Delete All* ➜ % ➜ *Delete All* or *Except Locked Msg.* ➜ % ➜ *Yes* or *No* ➜ % **All Messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages** **In message list (Drafts or Unsent Messages),** B ➜ *Delete All* ➜ % ➜ *Yes* ➜ %
Deleting Server Mail via Mail Notice	**In message list, select Mail Notice** ➜ B ➜ *Delete* ➜ % ➜ Select option ➜ % ➜ *Yes* ➜ %

Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list	Start Here B ➜ *Server Mail Box* ➜ % ➜ *Mail List* ➜ % ➜ See below ● If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press %. **One Message** Select message ➜ B ➜ *Delete* ➜ % ➜ *Yes* ➜ % **All Messages** B ➜ *Delete All* ➜ % ➜ *Yes* ➜ %
Deleting all Server Mail directly from Server	Start Here B ➜ *Server Mail Box* ➜ % ➜ *Delete All* ➜ % ➜ *Yes* ➜ % ➜ See below **All Retrieved Messages** *Except New Msg.* ➜ % **All Messages** *Delete All* ➜ %

■ Folders

Moving messages manually	**In message list, select message** ➜ B ➜ *Manage Msg.* ➜ % ➜ *Move to Folder* ➜ % ➜ Select folder ➜ % ● If sort messages confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press %; messages sent to/received from the number/address will be sorted into selected folder automatically.
Renaming folders	**In folder list, select folder** ➜ B ➜ *Rename* ➜ % ➜ Enter name ➜ % ● Available in Chat Folder list as well.

4

Messaging

4-31

Deleting folders	In folder list, select folder ▶ A ▶ *Delete* ▶ • ▶ *Yes* ▶ • ● When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.
Deleting Spam Folder messages	In folder list, *Spam Folder* ▶ A ▶ *Delete* ▶ • ▶ *Delete Spam Measures.* ▶ • ▶ *Yes* or *No* ▶ •
Adding folders	In folder list, A ▶ *Create New Folder* ▶ • ▶ Enter name ▶ • ● Available in Chat Folder list as well.
Moving folders	In folder list, select folder ▶ A ▶ *Relocate Folder* ▶ • ▶ Select target location ▶ •
Changing status of all messages within folders to read	In folder list, select folder ▶ A ▶ *To All Read* ▶ • ▶ *Yes* ▶ •
Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders	In folder list, select folder ▶ A ▶ *Protect* ▶ • ● To cancel protection, select *Not Protect* and press • in the steps above.
Canceling Secret	Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select Secret folder ▶ A ▶ *Unset Secret* ▶ •

■ Sorting into Folders

Re-sorting messages	In folder list, select folder ▶ A ▶ *Classify* ▶ • ● Available in Chat Folder list as well.
Sorting spam by setting keys	A ▶ *Settings* ▶ • ▶ *Receive Settings* ▶ • ▶ *Spam Mail Settings* ▶ • ▶ *Sort Spam Mail* ▶ • ▶ *Individual(Common)* ▶ • (☑) ▶ A ▶ Select blank entry ▶ • ▶ Select key ▶ • ▶ Select/enter number/address/subject ▶ • ▶ Y ▶ Y ▶ •
Editing/deleting sort keys	**Start Here** In folder list, select folder ▶ A ▶ *My Folders* ▶ • ▶ Select entry ▶ See below **Editing Sender/Recipient Key** A ▶ *Replace* ▶ • ▶ Select method ▶ • ▶ Select/enter number/address ▶ • ▶ Y **Editing Subject Key** • ▶ *Edit* ▶ • ▶ Y **Deleting an Entry** A ▶ *Delete* ▶ • ▶ *Yes* ▶ • ▶ Y **Deleting All Entries** A ▶ *Clear All* ▶ • ▶ *Yes* ▶ • ▶ Y

4

Messaging

4-32

■ Chat Folder

Deleting folders	⊠ ➡ *Chat Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.
Deleting all messages	⊠ ➡ *Chat Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Resetting Chat Folders	⊠ ➡ *Chat Folder* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Reset* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ Mail Groups

Renaming Mail Groups	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Mail Groups* ➡ ● ➡ Select Group ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Edit Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting Mail Groups/Group members	Start Here ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Mail Groups* ➡ ● ➡ Select Group ➡ See below **Mail Groups** ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Group Members** ● ➡ Select member ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Remove Entry* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ⁰⁄ ● Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.
Changing Mail Group members	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Mail Groups* ➡ ● ➡ Select Group ➡ ● ➡ Select member ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Re-assign Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select number or mail address ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ⁰⁄

Using Messages

Forwarding messages	In message window, ⊠ ➡ *Forward* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⁰⁄ ● Attached files are forwarded. ● To forward SMS messages, select *S! Mail* or *SMS* and press ●.
Sending from Drafts	⊠ ➡ *Drafts* ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⁰⁄
Sending unsent messages	Start Here ⊠ ➡ *Unsent Messages* ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ⊠ ➡ See below **Sending without Editing** *Resend* ➡ ● **Edit & Send** *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⁰⁄
Using sent messages	⊠ ➡ *Sent Messages* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Edit & Send* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⁰⁄
Saving schedules from message list	In message list, select message ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ *Save to Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Enter subject ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ Enter start/end date/time ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ ⁰⁄ ● Source message is accessible from schedule window (via *Related Mail* in Options menu).

4

Messaging

Forwarding Server Mail	**Via Mail Notice** In message list, select Mail Notice ➜ B ➜ *Forward* ➜ % ➜ *Notifi. Forward* (forward Mail Notice text only) or *Remote Forward* ➜ % ➜ Complete message ➜ Y
	Via Server Mail List B ➜ *Server Mail Box* ➜ % ➜ *Mail List* ➜ % ➜ Select message ➜ B ➜ *Remote Forward* ➜ % ➜ Complete message ➜ Y ● If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press %.
Opening Server Mail properties	B ➜ *Server Mail Box* ➜ % ➜ *Mail List* ➜ % ➜ Select message ➜ B ➜ *Message Details* ➜ % ● If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press %.
Checking Server Mail message count and volume	B ➜ *Server Mail Box* ➜ % ➜ *Mailbox Volume* ➜ %

View Settings

Changing view for Received Msg. folder	B ➜ *Settings* ➜ % ➜ *View Settings* ➜ % ➜ *Received Msg. View* ➜ % ➜ Select option ➜ % ● *Folder View by Account* is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Changing view for Sent Messages folder	B ➜ *Settings* ➜ % ➜ *View Settings* ➜ % ➜ *Sent Msg. View* ➜ % ➜ Select option ➜ % ● *Folder View by Account* is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Changing message list view	B ➜ *Settings* ➜ % ➜ *View Settings* ➜ % ➜ *Message List View* ➜ % ➜ Select option ➜ %
Changing message window scroll unit	B ➜ *Settings* ➜ % ➜ *View Settings* ➜ % ➜ *Scroll Unit* ➜ % ➜ Select unit ➜ %
Enabling sound auto-play	B ➜ *Settings* ➜ % ➜ *View Settings* ➜ % ➜ *Auto Play Attached Sound* ➜ % ➜ *On* ➜ % ● Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Enabling image auto-resize	B ➜ *Settings* ➜ % ➜ *View Settings* ➜ % ➜ *Picture Appearance* ➜ % ➜ *Double-Sized* ➜ % ● Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Disabling Animation View	B ➜ *Settings* ➜ % ➜ *View Settings* ➜ % ➜ *Animation View* ➜ % ➜ *Off* ➜ %
Showing complete sent/received message addresses	B ➜ *Settings* ➜ % ➜ *View Settings* ➜ % ➜ *Address View* ➜ % ➜ *Show All* ➜ %

Receive Settings

Limiting incoming S! Mail message size	B ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Receive Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Message Download* ➡ % ➡ *DL Size Limit* ➡ % ➡ *Restricted(300KB)* ➡ % • Exceeding attachments are reduced (images) or deleted (other files) at Server.
Retrieving all messages (including spam) automatically	B ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Receive Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Message Download* ➡ % ➡ *Condition(Auto)* ➡ % ➡ *All Message* ➡ % • Available when Sort Spam Mail is active.
	Start Here B ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Receive Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Message Download* ➡ % ➡ *Condition(Auto)* ➡ % ➡ *Selected Mail* ➡ B ➡ See below
Deleting addresses/ domains specified for complete message retrieval	**One Entry (Mail Address)** *Individual Address* ➡ B ➡ Select entry ➡ B ➡ *Delete* ➡ % ➡ *Yes* ➡ % ➡ Y
	All Entries (Mail Address) *Individual Address* ➡ B ➡ Select entry ➡ B ➡ *Clear All* ➡ % ➡ *Yes* ➡ % ➡ Y
	One Entry (Domain) *Receive by the Domain* ➡ B ➡ Select entry ➡ B ➡ *Delete* ➡ % ➡ *Yes* ➡ % ➡ Y
	All Custom Entries (Domain) *Receive by the Domain* ➡ B ➡ Select entry ➡ B ➡ *Clear All* ➡ % ➡ *Yes* ➡ % ➡ Y
Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages	B ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Receive Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Auto Delete Received Msg.* ➡ % ➡ Select option ➡ %

Changing alerts for messages received during handset use	**Start Here** B ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Receive Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Other Than Standby Screen* ➡ % ➡ See below
	Showing New Message Window *Incoming Display Setting* ➡ % ➡ *On* ➡ %
	Selecting Scrolling Notice Option *View Setting* ➡ % ➡ Select option ➡ %
	Muting Alert Sound *Alert Sound* ➡ % ➡ *Off* ➡ %
Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders	B ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Receive Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Secret Folder* ➡ % ➡ *No Response* ➡ %
Hiding graphics above Information window for received Feeling Mail	B ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Receive Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Link to Feeling* ➡ % ➡ *Standby Screen Info.* ➡ % ➡ *Off* ➡ %
Disabling Small Light for incoming Feeling Mail	B ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Receive Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Link to Feeling* ➡ % ➡ *Light* ➡ % ➡ *Off* ➡ %

4

Messaging

4-35

Disabling Vibration for incoming Feeling Mail	◙ ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Receive Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Link to Feeling* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Vibration Pattern* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Off* ⇒ ●
Changing ringtone settings for incoming Feeling Mail	Start Here ◙ ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Receive Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Link to Feeling* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Ringtone* ⇒ ● ⇒ See below
	Muting Ringer *Switch On/Off* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Off* ⇒ ●
	Changing Ringtones *Assign Tone* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select category ⇒ ● ⇒ Select folder ⇒ ● ⇒ Select tone/file ⇒ ●
	Changing Duration *Duration* ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter time ⇒ ●
Changing spam report recipient	◙ ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Receive Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Spam Mail Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Report Spam* ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit address ⇒ ● ⇒ *Yes* ⇒ ●

Create/Send Settings

Limiting outgoing S! Mail message size	◙ ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Create/Send Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Create Msg. Size* ⇒ ● ⇒ *300KB* or *Confirm(When exceed 300KB)* ⇒ ● ● Images are resized automatically when message size exceeds the limit upon attaching them.
Selecting size to which images are reduced when attaching	◙ ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Create/Send Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Picture Auto Resize* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select option ⇒ ● ● Set to *Ask Each Time* to select size every time an image is attached.
Hiding progress bar while sending messages	◙ ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Create/Send Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Sending Status* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Off(Background)* ⇒ ●
Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages	◙ ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Create/Send Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Auto Resend* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Off* ⇒ ●
Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages	◙ ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Create/Send Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Auto Delete Sent Msg.* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Not Auto Del* ⇒ ●
Requesting Delivery Report for all messages	◙ ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Create/Send Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Send Option* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Delivery Report* ⇒ ● ⇒ *On* ⇒ ● ● Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.

Designating/ editing reply-to address	Start Here ⊡ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Create/Send Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send Option* ➡ ● ➡ *Reply to Settings* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Designating
	Switch On/Off ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter address ➡ ●
	Editing
	Edit Address ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
Selecting quote option	⊡ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Create/Send Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Reply Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Reply With Text* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved	⊡ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Create/Send Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send File Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Attach Only* ➡ ●
	● Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Deleting Permitted List entries	Start Here ⊡ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Create/Send Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Restrictions Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Individual Address* ➡ ● ➡ *Permitted List* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊡ ➡ See below
	One Entry
	Delete ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Entries
	Clear All ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

PC Mail Settings

Retrieving complete PC Mail messages	⊡ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *All Contents* ➡ ●
Retrieving new messages automatically	Start Here ⊡ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Check* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Enabling Automatic Retrieval
	Mail Account ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Select account ➡ ● (☑) ➡ ㏉ ➡ ●
	● Setting Mail Account to *On* may incur high charges; checking for new messages may incur packet transmission fees even when none exists. Remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.
	● Handset does not check for new messages between 10:00 PM and 6:00 AM; change/cancel Blackout Time as needed.
	Enabling Automatic Retrieval Outside Japan
	Abroad ➡ ● ➡ *Enable* ➡ ● ➡ ●
	● Automatically retrieving messages abroad may incur high charges.
	Changing Automatic Retrieval Interval
	Interval ➡ ● ➡ Select interval ➡ ●
	Changing Blackout Time
	Blackout Time ➡ ● ➡ *Start Time:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter start time ➡ ● ➡ *End Time:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter end time ➡ ●
	Canceling Blackout Time
	Blackout Time ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

4

Messaging

4-37

Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder	In folder list, select PC Mail folder ➡ ⌑ ➡ *Retrieve New* ➡ ⦿
Disabling automatic word wrap	⌑ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Word wrap* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⦿
Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses	**Start Here** ⌑ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *DL All From List* ➡ ⌑ ➡ See below
	Selecting Sender Types Select item ➡ ⦿ (☐/✓) ➡ ⌄
	Specifying Addresses *Individual Address* ➡ ⌑ ➡ Select blank entry ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select method ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select/enter address ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⌄
	Specifying Domains (Direct Entry) *Receive by the Domain* ➡ ⌑ ➡ Select blank entry ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Direct Entry* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter domain ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⌄

Deleting addresses/ domains specified for complete message retrieval	**Start Here** ⌑ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *DL All From List* ➡ ⌑ ➡ See below
	One Entry (Mail Address) *Individual Address* ➡ ⌑ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⌑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⌄
	All Entries (Mail Address) *Individual Address* ➡ ⌑ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⌑ ➡ *Clear All* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⌄
	One Entry (Domain) *Receive by the Domain* ➡ ⌑ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⌑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⌄
	All Entries (Domain) *Receive by the Domain* ➡ ⌑ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⌑ ➡ *Clear All* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⌄
Restricting complete message retrieval by size	⌑ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Max DL Size* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select account ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select size ➡ ⦿ ● Effective when PC Mail DL is set to *All Contents* or *DL All From List*.

SMS Settings

Changing SMS Server sent message storage limit	▣ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *SMS Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Expiry Time* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Changing SMS Server number	Start Here ▣ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *SMS Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Message Center* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Editing
	Setting1(Default) to *Setting3* ➡ ● ➡ Edit number ➡ ●
	● Do not change Server number unless instructed to do so.
	Deleting
	Setting2 or *Setting3* ➡ ▣ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Activating
	Setting2 or *Setting3* ➡ ▣ ➡ *Set Default* ➡ ●
	● Activated number moves to *Setting1(Default)* and shifts the others down.
Changing character encoding for composing messages	▣ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *SMS Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Char-code* ➡ ● ➡ Select encoding ➡ ●

Sending Messages

❓ Cannot enter message text or attach files

● Attachment size affects text size limit. In turn, text size affects attachment size limit.

❓ *Sending failure* appears in Information window

● To resend, follow these steps:
Sending failure ▶ ● ▶ Select message ▶ ● ▶ ● ▶ ● ▶ ⌑

❓ Unsent message is not resent automatically

● Auto Resend makes up to two attempts to send unsent messages automatically. Resend unsent message(s) manually.

❓ Set Auto Play File cannot be set

● Apply to one file per message.
● Not available for Graphic Mail.
● May be unavailable for some files.

❓ Messaging Settings are not applied

● Settings are valid for one message, and effective when viewed on compatible handsets/applications.
● Delivery Report/Priority setting may not be effective when sent to mail addresses.
● Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.

❓ Cannot set Messaging Settings

● These settings cannot be applied to a message simultaneously (select one): Set Auto Delete, Reply Request, Forward NG, Delete NG, Quiz, Set Auto Play File.

❓ Signature is not inserted automatically

● Not available for SMS.

❓ Cannot cancel sent messages

● Short messages may not be canceled.
● Set Sent Cancel is available for S! Mail only.

❓ Cannot send PC Mail

● Some ISPs require SMTP authentication setup in addition to Set Receiving setup. Follow these steps to check User Name and Password for SMTP authentication:
⌑ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *PC Mail Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *PC Mail Account* ▶ ● ▶ Select account ▶ ● ▶ *Set Sending* ▶ ● ▶ *Sender Auth.* ▶ ● ▶ *SMTP Auth.* ▶ ⌑ ▶ *User Name* or *Password* ▶ ●

4

Messaging

4-40

Incoming Messages

Handset won't ring or vibrate for some incoming messages

- Handset does not ring or vibrate for messages with Low Priority.
- Handset does not ring, vibrate or open Information window for messages filtered as spam.

A confirmation requesting a reply appears

- To reply, choose *Yes* and press ●. Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

Handset won't respond according to Feeling Mail settings

- Responses set in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
  - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
  - The message was filtered as spam
  - The message was sorted to a Secret folder

Message text appears distorted

- Follow these steps to change encoding:
  [Message Window] ⊠ ➡ *View Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Char-code* ➡ ● ➡ **Select option** ➡ ●

Handling Messages

Cannot move messages into some folders

- To move to Secret folders, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand.

Cannot receive messages

- If ⊠ appears, memory is full; delete messages (**P.4-31**).
- If *out* appears, move to a place where signal is strong.

S! Mail is not delivered as sent

- Recipient must be subscribed to S! Mail, etc. The maximum size of messages/attachments handsets can receive varies by make and model. Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets.

Still images are not delivered as sent

- Recipient handset may not be JPEG-compatible. Convert JPEG files to PNG.

Video files are not delivered as sent

- Send video files to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.

4

Messaging

5

Internet

5-1

Service Basics

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai, or view PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser.
● Service requires a separate contract; retrieve Network Information to use these services.
● For more about Yahoo! Keitai, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.15-22**).

Transmission/Information Fees

Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. (Information fees may also apply.) To prevent automatic connection, select an appropriate option for *Script Settings*, *Flash® auto-download* and *Download Videos* (**P.5-16**).

Security

Electronic certificates are saved on handset to support SSL (encryption protocol for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information).

Opening Secure Pages
● A confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and press ● to proceed.
● When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GMO GlobalSign, RSA Security, SECOM Trust Systems and Comodo Japan cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Advanced

●Clearing cache (temporarily saved information) ●Clearing authentication information (And more on **P.5-10**)
●Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication ●Restoring default handset settings (And more on **P.5-16**)
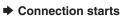
Using Yahoo! Keitai

Using Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Browse Yahoo! Keitai sites from Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu.
Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.

1 ⓨ ➡ **Connection starts**

Curso r
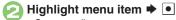
Internet Page

- Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu opens.
- To disconnect, press ⓨ.

2 **Highlight menu item ➡ ●**
- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat 2 to open additional links.

3 ☎ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Page closes**

Returning to Previous Pages
  [Internet Page] ⓨ ➡ **Previous page opens**
  ■ Follow these steps to return to the initial page:
  [Internet Page] ◙ ➡ *Forward* ➡ ●
Returning to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu
  [Internet Page] ◙ ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai*
  ➡ ●
User Authentication
- Follow these steps to open pages requiring authentication:
  Enter user ID or password ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ
Accessing メニューリスト Directly
  ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Menu List* ➡ ●
  ■ メニューリスト is a portal to Yahoo! Keitai content and services. (Includes a link to lists of sites supporting English.)

Using History

1 ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *History* ➡ ●
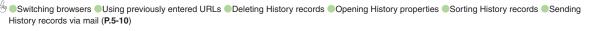
2 **Select record ➡ ● ➡ Connection starts**
- Corresponding page opens.

3 ☎ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Page closes**

Entering URLs Directly

1 ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Enter URL* ➡ ●

2 **Enter URL ➡ ● ➡ Connection starts**
- Corresponding page opens.

3 ☎ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Page closes**

5
Internet

Advanced

🔖 ●Switching browsers ●Using previously entered URLs ●Deleting History records ●Opening History properties ●Sorting History records ●Sending History records via mail (**P.5-10**)

5-3

Playing Media during Download

Play files while they transfer from the server (progressive download) or stream media files.

- Save progressive download files, as needed, after playback. (Copy protected files cannot be saved.)
- Streaming media files cannot be saved even after playback.
- Packet transmission fees apply even while playback is paused.

1 On a page, select file ➜ ●
- Playback starts.

Pausing Playback
●
- To resume playback, press ●.
- Progressive download continues even while playback is paused.

Stopping Playback
CLEAR/BACK
- Progressive download continues on the page even while playback is stopped. (Press ● to resume playback.)

Stopping Progressive Download
During playback, CLEAR/BACK ➜ **Previous page returns** ➜ CLEAR/BACK

Playback Sound
- Sound is heard from Speaker/Headphones regardless of ⊗Sound Output setting.

Advanced

◎ ●Customizing media playback settings ●Streaming from Media Player (**P.5-13**)

5

Internet

Browsing PC Sites

View PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser.

- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.
- Browsing PC sites may incur high charges depending on subscribed price plan.

1. ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ●

2. *Homepage* ➡ ● ➡ **Connection starts**

   ┌─────────────────────┐
   │ 📶▯   15:05▯▮ │
   │   │
   │ BB 🗑 My   │
   │ Yahoo!BB オークション My Yahoo │
   │   ▷ ──────── Pointer │
   │   ┌───┐ │
   │   └───┘ │
   │   画像 │
   │   │
   │   │
   └─────────────────────┘
   Internet Page

   - Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens.
   - If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
   - To disconnect, press ✆.

3. **Highlight menu item ➡ ●**
   - Corresponding page opens.
   - Repeat ❸ to open additional links.

4. ☎ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Page closes**

Returning to Previous Pages
[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ **Previous page opens**
■ Follow these steps to return to the initial page:
[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ *Forward* ➡ ●

Returning to Yahoo! JAPAN Home
[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ *Homepage* ➡ ●

User Authentication
Enter user ID or password ➡ ● ➡ ✉

Using History
In ❷, *History* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ●

Entering URLs Directly
In ❷, *Enter URL* ➡ ● ➡ Enter URL ➡ ●

Hiding Softkeys
[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ● ➡ *Softkey Area* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Browsing in Wideview
[Internet Page] ✿
■ Use Multi Selector according to page orientation.

5

Internet

Advanced

✎ ●Switching browsers ●Using previously entered URLs ●Deleting History records ●Opening History properties ●Sorting History records ●Sending History records via mail (**P.5-10**)
●Hiding navigation map for continuous scroll ●Changing scroll unit ●Hiding PC Site Browser messages (**P.5-13**)

Basic Operations

Page Browsing

Scrolling Pages

If page content continues beyond view, use 🔄 to scroll pages.
Long Press 🔄 to scroll continuously.

Switching Frames

On framed pages, Long Press 🔲 to switch active frame.

Frames

- In pointer navigation, point to a frame and press ● to select it.
- Otherwise, use 🔄 to select one.

Viewing Single Frame
[Internet Page] Select frame ➡ 🖂 ➡
Convenient Functions ➡ ● ➡
Frame In ➡ ●
■ To return, press 🔳.

Tabbed Browsing

Open another page in a new tab and switch between tabs.

■ **Opening a New Tab**

1. **On a page, select menu item
➡ 🖂 ➡ *Tab Menu* ➡ ●**

2. *Open in New Tab* ➡ ●

Tab

■ **Switching Tabs**

1. **⚹ (Long) ➡ 🔄 Select tab
➡ ●**

- In pointer navigation, point to a tab and press ● to open it.

Closing Tabs
⚹ (Long) ➡ 🔄 Select tab ➡ ● ➡
🖂 ➡ *Tab Menu* ➡ ● ➡ *Close Tab* or
Close All Other Tabs ➡ ●

Advanced

Selecting Text

Activate Drag Mode in pointer navigation to enable text selection. Select text to copy or look up words in dictionaries. Follow these steps to use a dictionary: (Text may not be selectable or linked page may open depending on the site or page.)

1. **On a page, point to first character ➡ ● (Long)**
   ● Drag Mode activates.

2. **Highlight text range**

   ニュース（スポーツ）
   (トピック1)
   アメリカで行われた世界腕相撲
   大会で、日本の石橋さんが
   見事に優勝。日本人の優勝
   は、一昨年め木村さんに次
   いで二人目の快挙。
   →関連記事

3. **●**

4. **(辞書①) ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ●**
   ● Dictionary opens with text inserted.

5. ***Search* ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc. ➡ ●**
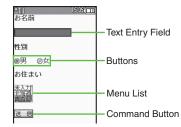
Starting Over
**After ③, point to first character ➡ ●
➡ From ②**

Additional Page Operations

Enter text or select/execute items.

お名前 —— Text Entry Field

性別
◉男 ○女 —— Buttons

お住まい

未入力
北海道
青森県 —— Menu List

送 信 —— Command Button

Text Entry

1. **On a page, select text entry field ➡ ●**

2. **Enter text ➡ ●**
   ● Internet page returns.

Using Entered Text (Input Memory)
**[Internet page] Select text entry field
➡ ● ➡ ☒ ➡ *Insert/Font Size* ➡ ●
➡ *Input Memory* ➡ ● ➡ Select text
➡ ●**

Pull-down Menu Item Selection

1. **On a page, select menu list field ➡ ●**

2. **Select item ➡ ●**

When Multiple Selection is Supported
● Select items as needed and press 🔲.

Page Item Indicators

■ **Selection Items**
Buttons ◉ or boxes ☐ appear.

1. **On a page, select button or box ➡ ●**

   性別
   ○男 ◉女

   ● ○/☐ changes to ◉/☑.

■ **Execution Items**
Execute the assigned command.

1. **On a page, select command ➡ ●**

5

Internet

5-7

Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmarks

Bookmark sites for quick access.

Saving Bookmarks

1. On a page, 🖂 ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ *<Add New Entry>* ➡ ●

2. Check/edit URL ➡ ●

3. Check/edit title ➡ ●

4. *Save* ➡ ●

Opening Bookmarks

1. ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ●

2. Select title ➡ ●
   - Corresponding page opens.

Switching Bookmarks Lists
After ❶, 🖂 ➡ *Change List* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●
Opening Bookmarks Online
[Internet Page] 🖂 ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ●

Saved Pages

Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet.

Saving Pages

Some pages may not be saved.

1. On a page, 🖂 ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ *Save* (or *Register(Image Only)*) ➡ ●
   - Select *Register(Image Only)* to capture page content as a screenshot.
   - If a confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●.

2. Check/edit title ➡ ●

Opening Saved Pages

1. ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ●

2. Select page ➡ ●
   - Corresponding page opens.

Switching Saved Pages Lists
After ❶, 🖂 ➡ *Change List* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●
Opening Saved Pages Online
[Internet Page] 🖂 ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ *Open List* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ ●

Advanced

😊 ●Deleting titles ●Editing titles ●Changing title order ●Sorting titles into folders ●Deleting pages ●Editing page titles ●Changing page order (And more on **P.5-13** - **5-14**)

Updating Blogs & News

Register RSS-compatible sites; view content updates without opening source sites.
Packet transmission fees apply.

Subscribing to RSS Feeds

Indicator below appears for RSS-compatible sites.

RSS Indicator

Available for PC Site Browser.

1. **On a compatible page, ⊠ ➡ *Register In RSS Feed* ➡ ●**

2. **Select feed ➡ ● (☐/✓) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ☒**

3. ***Save* ➡ ●**
   - Choose *Yes* to update immediately or *No* and press ●.

Via RSS Icons

Use RSS icons to subscribe to RSS feeds from sites that are not RSS-compatible. Available for PC Site Browser.
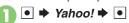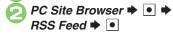
1. **On a page, select icon ➡ ●**

2. ***Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Save* ➡ ●**

Checking Updates

Follow these steps to update all feeds:

1. **● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ●**

2. ***PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ●**

RSS Feed List

3. ***Reload All* ➡ ●**
   - If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

4. **Select feed ➡ ●**

Title List

5. **Select title ➡ ●**
   - Information appears.

Updating Single RSS Feeds
[RSS Feed List] Select feed ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Reload* ➡ ●
- If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Accessing Source Sites
After ⑤, select linked title ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
- If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Advanced

✎ ●Disabling feed updates ●Sorting feeds into folders ●Deleting feeds ●Sorting feeds ●Opening feed properties ●Exchanging feeds with other devices ●Sending feeds via mail (**P.5-15**)

Connecting & Browsing

■ General

Switching browsers

On a page, `▣` ➡ *Switch Browser* ➡ `●` ➡ *This Page* or *Linked Page* ➡ `●` ➡ Select browser ➡ `●`

● A confirmation may appear when switching to PC Site Browser.

Using previously entered URLs

`Start Here` `●` ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ `●` ➡ See below

Yahoo! Keitai
Enter URL ➡ `●` ➡ `▣` ➡ *URL Entry Log* ➡ `●` ➡ Select URL ➡ `●` ➡ `●`

PC Site Browser
PC Site Browser ➡ `●` ➡ *Enter URL* ➡ `●` ➡ `▣` ➡ *URL Entry Log* ➡ `●` ➡ Select URL ➡ `●` ➡ `●`

■ History

Follow these steps to switch History lists:

`▣` ➡ *Change List* ➡ `●` ➡ Select browser ➡ `●`

Deleting History records

`Start Here` `●` ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ `●` ➡ *History* ➡ `●` ➡ See below

Single Record
Select record ➡ `▣` ➡ *Delete* ➡ `●` ➡ *Yes* ➡ `●`

All Records
`▣` ➡ *Delete All* ➡ `●` ➡ *Yes* ➡ `●`

Opening History properties

`●` ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ `●` ➡ *History* ➡ `●` ➡ Select record ➡ `▣` ➡ *Details* ➡ `●`

Sorting History records

`●` ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ `●` ➡ *History* ➡ `●` ➡ `▣` ➡ *Sort* ➡ `●` ➡ *By Domain* or *By Date* ➡ `●`

Sending History records via mail

`●` ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ `●` ➡ *History* ➡ `●` ➡ Select record ➡ `▣` ➡ *Send URL* ➡ `●` ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ `●` ➡ Complete message ➡ `ʏ`

● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

■ Memory Operation

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* ➡ `●`.

PC Site Browser ➡ `●` ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➡ `●`

Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)

`●` ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ `●` ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ `●` ➡ *Memory Operation* ➡ `●` ➡ *Delete Cache* ➡ `●` ➡ *Yes* ➡ `●`

Clearing cookies

`●` ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ `●` ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ `●` ➡ *Memory Operation* ➡ `●` ➡ *Delete Cookies* ➡ `●` ➡ *Yes* ➡ `●`

Clearing authentication information

`●` ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ `●` ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ `●` ➡ *Memory Operation* ➡ `●` ➡ *Delete Auth Info* ➡ `●` ➡ *Yes* ➡ `●`

Page Operations

Some operations may be unavailable depending on the page.

■ **Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser**

Using linked info	**Dialing Numbers** **On a page, highlight number ▶ ● ▶ *Call* or *Video Call* ▶ ●** **Sending Messages** **On a page, highlight number or mail address ▶ ● ▶ *Create Message* ▶ ● ▶ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ▶ ● ▶ Complete message ▶ ▣** ● For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step. **Saving to Phone Book** **On a page, highlight number or mail address ▶ ● ▶ *Save to Phone Book* ▶ ● ▶ *As New Entry* ▶ ● ▶ Complete other fields ▶ ▣** ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.
Copying text	**On a page, ▣ ▶ *Copy Text* ▶ ● ▶ Select first character ▶ ● ▶ Highlight text range ▶ ●**
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	**On a page, ▣ ▶ *Convenient Functions* ▶ ● ▶ *Copy & Search Dict.* ▶ ● ▶ Select first character ▶ ● ▶ Highlight text range ▶ ● ▶ Select dictionary ▶ ● ▶ *Search* ▶ ● ▶ Select word, etc. ▶ ●**
Using Web Search	**On a page, ▣ ▶ *Convenient Functions* ▶ ● ▶ *Web Search* ▶ ● ▶ Enter search text ▶ ●**
Searching current page	**On a page, ▣ ▶ *Convenient Functions* ▶ ● ▶ *Search* ▶ ● ▶ Enter search text ▶ ●** ● Press ● to jump to next search result, if any.

Jumping to page top/bottom	**On a page, ▣ ▶ *Convenient Functions* ▶ ● ▶ *Jump In Page* ▶ ● ▶ *Page Top* or *Page Bottom* ▶ ●**
Opening page properties	**On a page, ▣ ▶ *Convenient Functions* ▶ ● ▶ *Details* ▶ ● ▶ Select item ▶ ●**
Sending URLs via mail	**On a page, ▣ ▶ *Send URL* ▶ ● ▶ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ▶ ● ▶ Complete message ▶ ▣** ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Handling Flash® files	**Start Here On a page, ▣ ▶ *Convenient Functions* ▶ ● ▶ *Flash®Menu* ▶ ● ▶ See below** **Pausing/Playing** ***Pause*, *Resume* or *Replay* ▶ ●** **Selecting Image Quality** ***Quality* ▶ ● ▶ Select quality ▶ ●**
Saving files to Data Folder	**Start Here On a page, ▣ ▶ *Save Items* ▶ ● ▶ See below** **Files on Page** **Select file ▶ ● ▶ *Save* ▶ ● ▶ Enter name ▶ ● ▶ *Save here* ▶ ●** ● On a page with background image, select *Save Items* and press ● first. ● Some files are saved automatically. ● Be sure signal is strong, battery is charged adequately and that there is enough free memory beforehand. **Background Images** ***Save Background Image* ▶ ● ▶ *Save* ▶ ● ▶ Enter name ▶ ● ▶ *Save here* ▶ ●** ● For pages consisting of a background image only, omit *Save Background Image* selection step.

5

Internet

5-11

Updating page content	On a page, ⊡ ➡ *Reload* ➡ ●
	● To update content in Saved Pages, open a page and follow the steps above. (Not available for pages captured via *Register(Image Only)*.)
Changing encoding to read garbled text	On a page, ⊡ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Char-code* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Opening function shortcuts	On a page, ⊡ ➡ *Help* ➡ ●

■ Yahoo! Keitai

Changing Font Size	On a page, 3̄ (Long) to enlarge or 1̄ (Long) to reduce

■ PC Site Browser

Switching view	On a page, ⊡ ➡ *PC Screen* or *Small Screen* ➡ ●
	● In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.
Zooming on pages (Zoom Factor)	On a page, 3̄ (Long) to enlarge or 1̄ (Long) to reduce
Jumping to specific locations	On a page, 5̄ (Long) ➡ Quick Movement map appears ➡ Select target location ➡ ●
Enlarging specific areas	On a page, point to area ➡ 7̄ (Long)
	● Use 🖸 to move pointer in enlarged view; highlight item and press ● to execute it.
	● To close enlarged view, press a key other than 🖸.

Internet Page Settings

■ Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser
For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* ➡ ●.
PC Site Browser ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➡ ●

Disabling automatic image display/ sound playback	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Downloads* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Image Display
	Images ➡ ● ➡ *Do not Show* ➡ ●
	Sound Playback
	Sounds ➡ ● ➡ *Do not Play* ➡ ●
Changing Font Size	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●
Setting pointer navigation	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Cursor Settings* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Activating/Canceling
	Cursor Mode Settings ➡ ● ➡ *Normal Mode* or *Off* ➡ ●
	Changing Pointer Speed
	Speed Settings ➡ ● ➡ Select speed ➡ ●
Using handset as primary download storage	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Download to* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Preferred* ➡ ●
	● Some files may be saved to Memory Card regardless of this setting.

5

Internet

■ **Yahoo! Keitai**

Changing scroll unit	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Unit* ➡ ● ➡ Select unit ➡ ● ● Effective when Cursor Mode Settings is *Off*.

■ **PC Site Browser**

Hiding navigation map for continuous scroll	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Page Navigation* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Changing scroll unit	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Unit* ➡ ● ➡ Select unit ➡ ● ● Effective when Cursor Mode Settings is *Off*.
Hiding PC Site Browser messages	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Warning Message* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Streaming & Progressive Download

■ **General**

Customizing media playback settings	Start Here **During playback,** ☒ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Changing Playback Size *Display Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ● ● Playback size may not change depending on file.
	Setting Backlight Status *Backlight* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● Selecting *Normal Settings* applies Display Backlight settings.
	Adjusting Sound Effects *Sound Effects* ➡ ● ➡ Select effect ➡ ●

■ **Streaming**

Streaming from Media Player	Start Here ● ➡ *Media* ➡ ● ➡ *Streaming* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Resuming from Stopped Point *Last Played* ➡ ●
	Using Bookmarks *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ●
	Using History *History* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ●

Bookmarks

Deleting titles	Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	One Title Select title ➡ ☒ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Titles ☒ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Editing titles	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ☒ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Title:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter title ➡ ● ➡ ☞
Editing bookmarked URLs	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ☒ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *URL:* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ● ➡ ☞
Sending bookmarked URLs via mail	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ☒ ➡ *Send* ➡ ● ➡ *As Message* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ☞ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Changing title order	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ 🗔 ➡ *Change Order* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ●
Opening title properties	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ 🗔 ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
Sorting titles into folders	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ See below

Sorting titles into folders (continued):

Creating Folders
🗔 ➡ *Create Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Moving to Folders
Select title ➡ 🗔 ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ *Move* ➡ ●

Moving from Folders
Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ 🗔 ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ *Move* ➡ ●

Renaming Folders
Select folder ➡ 🗔 ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Deleting All Titles within a Folder
Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ 🗔 ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Deleting Folders
Select folder ➡ 🗔 ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Saved Pages

Deleting pages	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	One Page Select page ➡ 🗔 ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Pages 🗔 ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Editing page titles	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ 🗔 ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter title ➡ ●
Changing page order	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ 🗔 ➡ *Change Order* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ●
Opening page properties	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ 🗔 ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
Switching page list view	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ 🗔 ➡ *List View* or *Preview View* ➡ ●

5

Internet

RSS Feeds

Disabling feed updates	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ Select feed ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Restrict Update* ➡ ●
Sorting feeds into folders	Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Creating Folders** ⊡ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Create Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● **Moving to Folders** Select feed ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ *Move* ➡ ● **Renaming Folders** Select folder ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● **Deleting Folders** Select folder ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting feeds	Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ See below **One Entry** Select feed ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **All Entries** ⊡ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Alternatively, perform *Delete RSS Feed List* in Memory Operation (PC Site Browser Settings) to delete all feeds.
Sorting feeds	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Opening feed properties	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ Select feed ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
Exchanging feeds with other devices	Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Exporting All Feeds** *Export All* ➡ ● ➡ Select storage media ➡ ● **Importing (Adding Feeds)** *Import* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ *As New Items* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ● ● If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts. **Importing (Overwriting Existing Feeds)** *Import* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ● ● If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.
Sending feeds via mail	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ Select feed ➡ ⊡ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *As Message* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⊻

Security Settings

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* ➜ ●.

PC Site Browser ➜ ● ➜ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➜ ●

Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication	● ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Manufacture Number* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ●
Disabling referer information delivery to the Server	● ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Send Referer* ➜ ● ➜ *Not Send* ➜ ●
Enabling/disabling cookies	● ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Cookies* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●
Selecting script execution option	● ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Script Settings* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●
Selecting automatic Flash® file download option	● ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Flash® auto-download* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●
Disabling Flash® video download	● ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Download Videos* ➜ ● ➜ *Not Acquire* ➜ ●
Opening electronic certificates saved on handset	● ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Root Certificates* ➜ ● ➜ Select certificate ➜ ●

Changing validity of entered user ID/ password	● ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Keep Auth Info* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ● • *Per Browsing* retains entered user ID/password during browsing sessions. *On* retains such authentication information even after powering off. • Authentication information may not be retained depending on the site.
Suppressing confirmation before entering/exiting secure pages	● ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Secure Prompt* ➜ ● ➜ *Do not Show* ➜ ●

Resetting

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* ➜ ●.

PC Site Browser ➜ ● ➜ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➜ ●

Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.)	● ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Initialize Browser* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
Restoring default handset settings	● ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Reset Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

Connecting & Browsing

❓ **What is the bar at Display bottom?**

- This is a data progress bar; the number beside it indicates transmitted (green) or received (red) data.

Page Operations
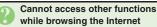
❓ **Internet page does not open completely**

- Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close other tabs.

❓ **Text overlaps**

- The site may be designed for browsing on PCs; try *Tiny* font size.
- Text may overlap when Zoom Factor is used; adjust scale.

❓ **Cannot access other functions while browsing the Internet**

- Multi Job may be active. When switching between browsers, additional function activation is disabled; close either browser and retry.

Bookmarks

❓ **Cannot add Bookmarks**

- *<Add New Entry>* is unselectable if storage limit is reached; delete titles.

6

Digital TV

Basics

001SH supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast services developed for mobile devices in Japan.

Watch Live Television

Set up a channel list for your service area to access available programming.

TV Listing (EPG) & Program Info

Find program channels and times, or open program details via current channel's schedule.

Reserve TV Programs

Record a show or activate TV at a specified time; enter dates & times manually or reference TV Listing electronic program guide.

View Data Broadcasts

In addition to audio and visuals, enjoy text, program-related information and interactive services.

Record & Play Back Shows

Record current program on Memory Card for later viewing.

Important Digital TV Usage Notes
- 001SH TV is exclusively for use in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving or cycling. Accidents may result. Phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004). When walking, always pay attention to your surroundings, especially near road/rail crossings, etc.
- When using TV while charging battery, separate AC Charger and Antenna to avoid interference.
- Call transmissions, incoming messages or mobile phone use in the immediate vicinity may affect audiovisual quality.
- Programs may not be viewable or record properly when:
  - Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
  - In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
  - Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
  - Near high-voltage lines, neon lights or wireless base stations
  - Near railroad tracks or highways
  - Anywhere a jamming signal is broadcast/reception is unstable

Area Setup

When activating TV for the first time, follow these steps to set up channels by area:

1 🔲

Channels unset.
Set now?

Yes
No

● Setup confirmation appears.

2 *Yes* ➜ ●

Select Region
Hokkaido/Tohoku
Hokuriku/Koshin'e…
Kanto
Tokai
Kansai
Chugoku
Shikoku

3 Select region ➜ ●

4 Select prefecture ➜ ● ➜ Select locality ➜ ●

Tokyo
Tokyo 23 Wards
set.
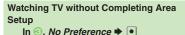
● After setup, channel list appears.

5 ●

Saved Tokyo 23
Wards in Area 1.
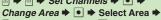
● To watch TV, select *Digital TV* and press ●.

Watching TV without Completing Area Setup
In **3**, *No Preference* ➜ ●
Adding Reception Areas
🔲 ➜ 🔳 ➜ *Set Channels* ➜ ● ➜ *Change Area* ➜ ● ➜ Select Area ➜ 🔳 ➜ *Set Area Info* ➜ ● ➜ From **3**

Digital TV Antenna

TV Antenna is located behind Display. Move handset to find best reception.

Antenna Area

6 Digital TV

Advanced

🔋 ●Switching reception Areas ●Renaming Areas ●Changing/disabling 🔲 function ●Editing channels ●Deleting all channels in Area ●Adding new channels to Area ●Updating all channels in the Area (**P.6-10**)

6-3

Watching TV

Complete Area setup (**P.6-3**) first.

1 📺

TV Window

2 **Use Keypad to select a channel**

- Use 🔄 to switch channels one by one; Long Press to find channel with stable signal automatically.

3 ☎ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ TV ends

Changing Display Size/TV Orientation [TV Window] 📝

- Press to toggle view between Full Screen, Normal (Portrait), Enlarge (Portrait) and Normal (Landscape).
- In portrait position, Data Broadcast appears below TV image.

Toggling 🔘 Function

- While watching TV in portrait position, press 🔘 to toggle 🔘 function between volume control (Volume Operation mode) and Data Broadcast item selection (Data Operation mode).

Incoming Calls

- Press 📞 to answer calls.

Incoming Messages

- Double beep sounds and New Message notice appears. Long Press 📧 to access messages.
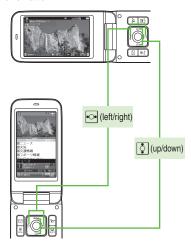
Key Assignments

Open Options Menu	📧
Toggle Panel On/Off	📧 (in portrait) 🔘 (in landscape)
Volume Control	🔘*

*In portrait position, Volume Operation mode.

Multi Selector

Multi Selector response changes with TV orientation.

🔄 (left/right)

🔘 (up/down)

Advanced

🔗 ●Opening Help ●Searching for current program on the Internet ●Adjusting brightness ●Changing panel pattern in portrait position ●Changing handset responses to incoming transmissions, etc. (And more on **6-10** - **6-11**)
●Changing subtitle settings ●Changing sound settings (**P.6-12**)

6

Digital TV

6-4

Panel Description
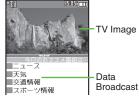
1	Area name	5	Station name
2	Channel key	6	Signal strength*
3	Channel	7	Sound Channel
4	Program name	8	Volume

*The more bars the better.
Indicator position varies with display content, etc.

Data Broadcast (Japanese)

In portrait position, Data Broadcast appears below TV image. Use 🔘 to select an item and press ● to access program-related information and interactive services.
In Volume Operation mode, press ⚏ to switch to Data Operation mode first.
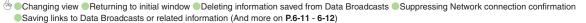
TV Image

Data Broadcast

Data Broadcast Window

Data Broadcast Fees

- Data Broadcast information viewing is free, however, using data links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.
- A confirmation appears the first time a fee-based Network connection is established from a channel; if accepted, further Network connections are established without confirmation until the channel is changed.

Advanced

● Changing view ●Returning to initial window ●Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts ●Suppressing Network connection confirmation ●Saving links to Data Broadcasts or related information (And more on **P.6-11** - **6-12**)

6

Digital TV

6-5

Obtaining Program Information

Find program channels and times, or open program details via current channel's schedule.

TV Listing	Start EPG S! Application to find program channels and times for specified area
Program Info	Open program details via current channel's schedule; set Reservations to record shows or activate TV

TV Listing (Japanese)

1 In TV window, [r] (Long)
 ● EPG application starts; refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.
 ● When using EPG application for the first time, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

Program Info

1 In TV window, [≡] ➡ *OperateProgram* ➡ [●]

2 *Program Info.* ➡ [●]

```
 ╔═══════════════════╗
 ║ Program Info.     ║ 15:05
 ║ 15:00 - 15:50     ║
 ║ ニュース            ║
 ║ 15:50 - 16:00     ║
 ║ 天気               ║
 ║ 16:00 - 17:00     ║
 ║ スポーツ情報        ║
 ╚═══════════════════╝
```
Program Info Window

3 Select program ➡ [●]
 ● To return to TV window, press [CLR] twice.

Setting Recording Timer via Program Info
[Program Info Window] Select
program ➡ [▼] ➡ [●]
 ■ Insert a Memory Card beforehand.
 ■ To hide message, press [≡] after [▼].
 ■ Timer entries set via Program Info are updated with program changes automatically. Program cancellations cancel corresponding Timer entries. (Poor signal conditions may inhibit updates or cancellations.)

Setting TV Timer via Program Info
[Program Info Window] Select
program ➡ [≡] ➡ *Watching* ➡ [●]

Recording Programs

Record current program on Memory Card.

Precautions
- Saved files cannot be forwarded or attached to messages.
- 001SH encryption technology prevents unauthorized copying or playback of Memory Card files through data encryption and authentication. Files copied from Memory Card to other cards on PC are unplayable.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized reproduction/other use.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recorded content.

1 **In TV window, ● (Long) ➡ Recording starts**

Recording Window

- Changing volume, etc. does not affect recordings.
- When Small Light flashes orange, reception is poor; change location to where Small Light illuminates green.

2 **● (Long) ➡ Recording ends**

Recording Programs in Portrait [TV Window] ● (Long)
■ To stop, Long Press ● while recording.
Memory/Battery Runs Low or Video Call/S! Circle Talk Request is Accepted
- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

6 Digital TV

Advanced

Recording programs without Data Broadcasts *Saving Data Broadcast images to handset* (**P.6-13**)

Playing Recorded Programs

1 In TV window, ⊠ ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ●

Video List

- ▨ indicates the file is unplayable.

2 Select file ➡ ●

Playback Window

- Playback starts. (The last played file plays from where it stopped.)

3 ⊠ (Long) ➡ Playback stops

Major Playback Operations

Adjust volume or temporarily enlarge a portion of widescreen image following the same operations used while watching TV.

Fast Forward	◌▸¹
Rewind	◂◌ ¹, ²
Skip Forward	#
Skip Backward	✳
Pause³	●⁴
Split File	■ (Long)
Set Marker	■
Toggle Panel On/Off	⊠

¹Each press increases speed. To resume normal playback, press ●.
²Long Press to replay. (Available when no Marker is saved.)
³In pause, use ◌ to reverse/advance frame.
⁴In portrait position, Volume Operation mode.

6

Digital TV

Advanced

⊠ ●Splitting files by specifying a time point ●Playing files repeatedly ●Playing split files ●Checking memory status ●Renaming files ●Deleting files ●Opening file properties ●Playing files with Markers (And more on **P.6-13** - **6-14**)

TV Timer & TV Recording Timer

1 In TV window, ☒ ➡ *Rec. Operation* ➡ ●

2 *Reservation List* ➡ ●

3 ☒ ➡ *New Entry* ➡ ●

4 *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ *Watching* or *Recording* ➡ ●

5 Enter start date/time ➡ ● ➡ Enter end date/time ➡ ●

6 *Channel:* ➡ ● ➡ Select channel ➡ ● ➡ ☒

Setting Timer via EPG
In **4**, *From TV Listing* ➡ ●
■ Refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.

    Timer Recording Precautions

Confirm target channel reception; keep handset open.
■ Insert a Memory Card.
■ End the current operations.
■ Be sure battery is charged adequately and there is enough free memory.

    At Timer Time (TV Alarm Time)

TV and Alarm activate.

Reservation time for watching TV will come soon.

OK

Recording starts slightly before the Timer start time and ends a few seconds after the Timer end time.

While Using Another Function
● TV activates via Multi Job and target program/recording starts. However, if Multi Job cannot activate in the current state, TV may remain off, or the current function may end automatically (unsaved images, messages, Phone Book entries, etc. may be deleted). End all active functions/applications before Timer time.

6

Digital TV

Advanced

✍ ●Opening/editing/deleting Timer details ●Opening/playing/deleting Timer log records ●Customizing TV Alarm settings ●Prioritizing current operation over TV Timer/TV Recording Timer (**P.6-14**)

Area & Channel

Switching reception Areas	**While watching TV,** ⊠ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ● ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ● ➡ **Select Area** ➡ ●
Renaming Areas	**While watching TV,** ⊠ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ● ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ● ➡ **Select Area** ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Change Area Name* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter name** ➡ ●
Changing/disabling ⊡ **function**	Start Here **While watching TV,** ⊠ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ● ➡ *Channel Key Setting* ➡ ● ➡ **See below** **Toggling All Receivable Channels** *By Manual* ➡ ● **Disabling** *Disable* ➡ ●
Editing channels	Start Here **While watching TV,** ⊠ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ● ➡ *CH Switch* ➡ ● ➡ **Select channel** ➡ ⊠ ➡ **See below** **Switching Channel Positions** *Flip* ➡ ● ➡ **Select target key** ➡ ● **Deleting Channels** *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting all channels in Area	**While watching TV,** ⊠ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ● ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ● ➡ **Select Area** ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Reset Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Adding new channels to Area	**While watching TV,** ⊠ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ● ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ● ➡ **Select Area** ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Channel Update* ➡ ● ➡ *Update Further* ➡ ●
Updating all channels in the Area	**While watching TV,** ⊠ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ● ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ● ➡ **Select Area** ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Channel Update* ➡ ● ➡ *Update All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Watching

Opening Help	**While watching TV,** ⊠ ➡ *Help* ➡ ● ● Also available while recording or playing programs.
Searching for current program on the Internet	**While watching TV,** ⊠ ➡ *OperateProgram* ➡ ● ➡ *Program Info. Search* ➡ ● ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Enlarging image portion in landscape	**With TV in landscape,** 1 - 9 **(Long)** ● Corresponding image portion is enlarged. ● May be unavailable depending on viewing style.
Saving current channel	**While watching TV,** ⊠ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ● ➡ *Save Channel* ➡ ● ➡ **Select key** ➡ ● ● To overwrite a saved channel, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Adjusting brightness	**While watching TV,** ⊠ ➡ *AV Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Brightness* ➡ ● ➡ **Adjust level** ➡ ●
Selecting sound option	**While watching TV,** ⊠ ➡ *AV Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Tone* ➡ ● ➡ **Select option** ➡ ●
Changing panel pattern in portrait position	**With TV in portrait,** ⊠ ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Panel Type* ➡ ● ➡ **Select pattern** ➡ ●

Customizing viewing options for landscape position	Start Here **With TV in landscape,** ⊡ ➜ *Advanced* ➜ ● ➜ *Set Landscape* ➜ ● ➜ **See below**
	Showing Indicators Always *Display Icon* ➜ ● ➜ *On* ➜ ●
	Disabling Partial Image Enlargement *Magnify Area* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ●
	Using Portrait Position Key Assignments *Key Direction* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ●
Switching One Seg services	**While watching TV,** ⊡ ➜ *Set Channels* ➜ ● ➜ *Select Serv. Station* ➜ ● ➜ Select service ➜ ● • Available for programs with multiple services.
Listening to audio from Speaker	**While watching TV,** ⊡ ➜ *Advanced* ➜ ● ➜ *Sound Output* ➜ ● ➜ *Loudspeaker* ➜ ●
Switching audio output to wireless device	● ➜ *TV* ➜ ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⑧*Sound Output* ➜ ● ➜ *Bluetooth Device* ➜ ●
Using wireless Headphones	**While watching TV,** ⑧ **(Long)** • Pair SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® headphones beforehand.
Setting TV to end automatically after a period of time	**While watching TV,** ⊡ ➜ *Advanced* ➜ ● ➜ *Auto Exit* ➜ ● ➜ *Auto Exit Time* ➜ ● ➜ Select time ➜ ●
Disabling auto shut-off when handset is closed	**While watching TV,** ⊡ ➜ *Advanced* ➜ ● ➜ *Auto Exit* ➜ ● ➜ *Close Action* ➜ ● ➜ *Watch TV* ➜ ●

Changing handset responses to incoming transmissions, etc.	Start Here ● ➜ *TV* ➜ ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Calls & Alarms* ➜ ● ➜ **See below**
	Showing Alarm Notice *Alarm* ➜ ● ➜ *Alarm Notice* ➜ ●
	Showing Voice Calls, Etc. Select item ➜ ● ➜ *Notice a Call* ➜ ●
	Showing New Message Window *Incoming Message* ➜ ● ➜ *Calls & Alarms* ➜ ●

Broadcast Data

Changing view	**With Data Broadcast in portrait,** ⊡ ➜ *SetBroadcastData* ➜ ● ➜ *Change View (Data)* ➜ ● • To return to TV window, press ⊠.
Returning to initial window	**With Data Broadcast in portrait,** ⊡ ➜ *SetBroadcastData* ➜ ● ➜ *Back to Top* ➜ ●
Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts	Start Here **While watching TV,** ⊡ ➜ *SetBroadcastData* ➜ ● ➜ *Delete StationData* ➜ ● ➜ **See below**
	Deleting by Station Select station ➜ ⊡ ➜ *Delete* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
	Deleting All ⊡ ➜ *Delete All* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
Suppressing Network connection confirmation	**While watching TV,** ⊡ ➜ *SetBroadcastData* ➜ ● ➜ *Notify Connection* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ●

6

Digital TV

Sending/hiding Location Information	**Start Here** **While watching TV,** ▣ ▶ *SetBroadcastData* ▶ ● ▶ *Location* ▶ ● ▶ **See below**
	Sending Always *On* ▶ ●
	Hiding Always *Off* ▶ ●
Hiding manufacture number and other information	**While watching TV,** ▣ ▶ *SetBroadcastData* ▶ ● ▶ *Manufacture Number* ▶ ● ▶ *Off* ▶ ●

TV Link (Japanese)

Saving links to Data Broadcasts or related information	**While viewing Data Broadcast, select link source** ▶ ● • Link navigation varies by program. Follow onscreen instructions to save links.
Using TV links	**Start Here** ● ▶ *TV* ▶ ● ▶ *TV Link* ▶ ● ▶ **See below**
	Opening TV Links **Select link** ▶ ● • Connection fees may apply.
	Opening Properties **Select link** ▶ ▣ ▶ *Details* ▶ ●
Deleting TV links	**Start Here** ● ▶ *TV* ▶ ● ▶ *TV Link* ▶ ● ▶ **See below**
	One Entry **Select link** ▶ ▣ ▶ *Delete* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●
	All Entries ▣ ▶ *Delete All* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●

Subtitle & Sound

Changing subtitle settings	**Start Here** **While watching TV,** ▣ ▶ *Subtitle/Sound* ▶ ● ▶ **See below** • May be unavailable depending on program content or viewing style (TV orientation, etc.).
	Showing Subtitles Always *Display Subtitle* ▶ ● ▶ *On* ▶ ●
	Hiding Subtitles Always *Display Subtitle* ▶ ● ▶ *Off* ▶ ●
	Changing Subtitle Language *Subtitle Language* ▶ ● ▶ *Language 2* ▶ ●
	Showing Subtitle Area Always *Auto Subtitle Off* ▶ ● ▶ *Off* ▶ ●
	Showing Subtitles at the Top *Subtitle Position* ▶ ● ▶ *Upper* ▶ ●
Changing sound settings	**Start Here** **While watching TV,** ▣ ▶ *Subtitle/Sound* ▶ ● ▶ **See below**
	Selecting Sound Option *Sound Type* ▶ ● ▶ *Sound2* ▶ ● • Available when multiple sounds are supported.
	Listening to Sub Language *Sound Channel* ▶ ● ▶ *Sub* ▶ ●
	Listening to Main & Sub Languages *Sound Channel* ▶ ● ▶ *Main + Sub* ▶ ●

6

Digital TV

Recording

Recording programs without Data Broadcasts	While watching TV, ▣ ➜ *SetBroadcastData* ➜ ● ➜ *Set Recording* ➜ ● ➜ *Image Only* ➜ ●
Saving Data Broadcast images to handset	While watching TV, ▣ ➜ *SetBroadcastData* ➜ ● ➜ *Image Location* ➜ ● ➜ *Phone Memory* ➜ ●

Recorded Programs

■ Playback

Splitting files by specifying a time point	During playback, ▣ ➜ *Split File* ➜ ● ➜ *Select Point* ➜ ● ➜ ◌ Specify point ➜ ● ➜ *Confirm* ➜ ●
Playing files repeatedly	● ➜ *TV* ➜ ● ➜ *TV Player* ➜ ● ➜ ▣ ➜ *Playback Pattern* ➜ ● ➜ *Repeat* ➜ ●
Playing split files	● ➜ *TV* ➜ ● ➜ *TV Player* ➜ ● ➜ Select split file ➜ ● ➜ Select file ➜ ●

■ Managing

Selecting multiple files	Start Here ● ➜ *TV* ➜ ● ➜ *TV Player* ➜ ● ➜ ⌄ ➜ See below
	Selecting Select file ➜ ● (✓) • To uncheck, press ● again.
	Selecting/Unchecking All ▣ ➜ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➜ ●
Checking memory status	● ➜ *TV* ➜ ● ➜ *TV Player* ➜ ● ➜ ▣ ➜ *Memory Remaining* ➜ ●
Renaming files	● ➜ *TV* ➜ ● ➜ *TV Player* ➜ ● ➜ Select file ➜ ▣ ➜ *Rename* ➜ ● ➜ Enter name ➜ ●
Deleting files	Start Here ● ➜ *TV* ➜ ● ➜ *TV Player* ➜ ● ➜ See below
	Single Files Select file ➜ ▣ ➜ *Delete* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
	All Files ▣ ➜ *Delete All* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
Opening file properties	● ➜ *TV* ➜ ● ➜ *TV Player* ➜ ● ➜ Select file ➜ ▣ ➜ *Details* ➜ ●

6

Digital TV

6-13

Markers

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Playing files with Markers</td><td>Start Here During playback ➡ See below</td></tr>
<tr><td>Skipping between Markers
◌ (Long) or ◌ (Long)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Moving to Specific Markers
0 - 9</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Using Marker List</td><td>Start Here During playback, ▣ ➡ Set Marker ➡ ● ➡ Marker List ➡ ● ➡ See below</td></tr>
<tr><td>Starting Playback
Select number ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>Deleting a Marker
Select number ➡ ▣ ➡ Delete ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>Deleting All Markers
▣ ➡ Delete All ➡ ● ➡ Yes ➡ ●</td></tr>
</table>

TV Timer & TV Recording Timer

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Opening/editing/deleting Timer details</td><td>Start Here While watching TV, ▣ ➡ Rec. Operation ➡ ● ➡ Reservation List ➡ ● ➡ See below</td></tr>
<tr><td>Opening Entries
Select entry ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>Editing Entries
Select entry ➡ ▣ ➡ Edit ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ⊻
● Some entries may not be edited depending on the content.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Deleting Entries
Select entry ➡ ▣ ➡ Delete ➡ ● ➡ Yes ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Opening/playing/deleting Timer log records</td><td>Start Here While watching TV, ▣ ➡ Rec. Operation ➡ ● ➡ Reservation List ➡ ● ➡ ⊻ ➡ See below</td></tr>
<tr><td>Opening Timer Log
Select record ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>Playing Recorded Programs
Select record ➡ ▣</td></tr>
<tr><td>Deleting Records
Select record ➡ ⊻ ➡ Yes ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Customizing TV Alarm settings</td><td>Start Here While watching TV, ▣ ➡ Rec. Operation ➡ ● ➡ Reservation List ➡ ● ➡ ▣ ➡ TV Alarm ➡ ● ➡ See below</td></tr>
<tr><td>Changing TV Alarm Time
Alarm Time ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>Disabling Tone/Vibration/Small Light
Alarm, Vibration or Light ➡ ● ➡ Off ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>Changing Duration
Duration ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>Prioritizing current operation over TV Timer/TV Recording Timer</td><td>● ➡ TV ➡ ● ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ TV Reserve Prior ➡ ● ➡ Off ➡ ●</td></tr>
</table>

6

Digital TV

Watching

TV won't activate

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

Cannot watch TV

- Reception may be poor; change location to improve it. (TV signal strength is independent of handset signal strength.)
- Handset may not have been used for a period of time; retrieve Network Information.
- TV is disabled upon subscription termination.

Area setup does not complete correctly

- Perform *Update All* in Channel Update. Area setup may not complete correctly depending on the area or service availability.

Recording

Ringtone does not sound as set while recording

- When a Chaku-Uta® file, etc. is set as ringtone, default ringtone may sound for incoming transmissions while recording.

TV Recording Timer

Could not start recording. appeared as recording result

- Recording failed due to low battery/ memory, active function, etc.

Recording aborted. appeared as recording result

- Recording was interrupted due to low memory.

6

Digital TV

7

Camera & Imaging

Getting Started

Capture still images or record video.

Various Image Sizes

Select small sizes to send captured images/recorded video via S! Mail*; select larger sizes for higher resolutions.

Multiple Shooting Modes

Apply effect or add frame, or capture successive images.

Auto Focus

Measures the distance between subjects and camera to adjust focus.

Review

Open/play last saved mobile camera file quickly; access older files as needed.

*May not be delivered as sent depending on image/recording size or recipient device.

Important Mobile Camera Usage Notes
● Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with soft dry cloth before use.
● Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
● Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
● Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
Auto Shut-off
● Before image capture/recording, mobile camera shuts down after a period of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.
Shutter Click
● Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound at fixed volume regardless of handset settings.

Display Indicators

The following indicators appear at the top of Display.

Photo Viewfinder

1	Memory	**6**	Save to
2	Picture Quality	**7**	Focus
3	Picture Size	**8**	White Balance
4	Continuous Shoot	**9**	Exposure
5	Scene	**10**	Self-timer

Video Viewfinder

1	Video Quality	**5**	Focus
2	Record Size	**6**	Exposure
3	Record Time	**7**	Self-timer
4	Save to		

7

Camera & Imaging

Advanced

Capturing Still Images

1 ■ (Long)

2 Frame subject on Display

Photo Viewfinder

3 ●

Captured Image Window

- Shutter clicks; captured image appears. (To discard file and start over, press ⌫.)

4 ●

- Image is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)
- Open saved images via Review or Data Folder.

5 ☎ ➡ Camera shuts down

Sending Captured Images via Mail
[Captured Image Window] ☑ ➡
Complete message ➡ ☑
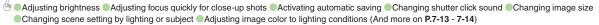
■ Pre-Image Capture Operations

Zoom In/Out*	⎇/⎇
Toggle Mode	☑
Adjust Brightness	⊙/⊙
Change Image Size	5
Open Help	0

*May be unavailable depending on image size.

7

Camera & Imaging

Advanced

ⓑ ●Adjusting brightness ●Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots ●Activating automatic saving ●Changing shutter click sound ●Changing image size ●Changing scene setting by lighting or subject ●Adjusting image color to lighting conditions (And more on **P.7-13** - **7-14**)

Recording Video

1 ■ **(Long)** ➡ ⁿ

Video Viewfinder

2 **Frame subject on Display ➡** ●

● Recording starts after a tone. (To start over, press [CLEAR].)

3 ●

Video Save Menu

● Recording stops with a tone. (To discard file and start over, press [CLEAR].)

4 *Save* ➡ ●

● Video is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)
● Play saved video via Review, Data Folder or Media Player.

5 [END] ➡ **Camera shuts down**

■ **Pre-Recording Operations**

Zoom In/Out	⬆/⬇
Toggle Mode	ⁿ
Adjust Brightness	◄/►
Change Record Size	5
Open Help	0

Playing Unsaved Video
In **4**, *Preview* ➡ ●
Sending Recorded Video via Mail
In **4**, *Send* ➡ ● ➡ *Save and Send*
➡ ● ➡ *Complete message* ➡ ⁿ
■ May not be delivered as sent depending on recording size or recipient device.
Incoming Calls
● If a call arrives before video is saved, recorded clip is temporarily saved. End the call to return.
If Battery Runs Low
● Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)
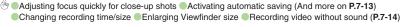
7

Camera & Imaging

Advanced

🔊 ●Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots ●Activating automatic saving (And more on **P.7-13**)
●Changing recording time/size ●Enlarging Viewfinder size ●Recording video without sound (**P.7-14**)

Opening Saved Files

Opening Last Saved File

Open/play last saved mobile camera file; access older files as needed.

1 ● ➜ *Camera* ➜ ●

2 *Review* ➜ ●

Review Window

● To end, press ⏻.

Enlarging Images
   After ❷, ●
Pausing/Resuming Video
   After ❷, ● (press to pause/resume)
Opening Help
   [Review Window] ⁰⁺

Accessing Older Files

1 In Review window, ⓨ

▪ Trl   15:05
Pictures | DCIM | Videos
101001_150525.jpg

My Pict.

MailArt

Charact.

Date:10/10/01 15:05
Size:309KB
Options | View | SwitchTab

Review File List

● File list appears.
● Press ⓨ to toggle lists.

2 Select file ➜ ●
   ● File opens/plays.
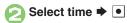
Using Shooting Modes

May be unavailable depending on selected image/recording size.

Self-timer

1. In Photo/Video Viewfinder,
   ✉ ➡ *Self-timer* ➡ ●

2. Select time ➡ ●

3. **Frame subject on Display**
   ➡ ●
   - After selected time elapses, captured image appears or recording starts.
   - To stop recording, press ●.
   - For more, see operation descriptions on **P.7-4** or **P.7-5**.

Releasing Shutter during Countdown
After ❸, ●

Incoming Calls/Alarm during Countdown
- Countdown stops. (Self-timer remains active.)

Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)

Available Modes:

4 Pictures	Capture four separate images with Index Image
9 Pictures	Capture nine separate images with Index Image
Overlapped	Capture five images to create a composite image

1. In Photo Viewfinder, ✉ ➡
   Modes ➡ ●

   ```
   ┌ Add Frame ┐
   Can take picture match
   frame.
   ```
   Mode Menu

2. *Continuous Shoot* ➡ ●

3. Select mode ➡ ● ➡ Select
   speed ➡ ●
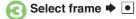
4. **Frame subject on Display**
   ➡ ●
   - After image capture, Index Image or a composite image appears.
   - When shooting speed is set to *Manual* (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat ❹ for each frame.

5. ● (Long)
   - All captured images are saved.

Saving the Selected Image
After ❹, ☺ (select image) ➡ ●

Adding Frames (Photo Camera)

1. In mode menu, *Add Frame*
   ➡ ●

2. *Preset Frames* ➡ ●

3. Select frame ➡ ●

4. **Frame subject on Display**
   ➡ ●
   - Captured image appears.
   - Press ● to save image. (Viewfinder returns.)

Using Frames in Data Folder
In ❷, *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select
frame ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ Frame subject
on Display ➡ ●

7

Camera & Imaging

7-7

Picture Editor

Picture Editor Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

Resize	Select from preset sizes or crop image
Frame	Add Frame to images
Paste	Add text/dates to images
Retouch	Dress up images with preloaded visual effects
Stamp	Add stamps to images
Face Arrange	Make smiley, angry or sad faces
Correction	Correct images
Rotate	Rotate images
File Format	Convert file format and change file size

Basic Operation

1️⃣ ● ➜ *Data Folder* ➜ ●

2️⃣ *Pictures* ➜ ● ➜ Select image ➜ ●

3️⃣ ▫ ➜ *Edit* ➜ ●

4️⃣ *Picture Editor* ➜ ●

Picture Editor Menu

5️⃣ Select effect ➜ ● ➜ Edit
● To start over, press 🔙.

6️⃣ When finished, ⓨ

7️⃣ *Save as New* ➜ ●
● To overwrite, select *Overwrite* and press ●. (Omit 8️⃣.)

8️⃣ Enter name ➜ ● ➜ *Save here* ➜ ●

Canceling Effects
After 6️⃣, *Undo* ➜ ●
■ To restore effect immediately after canceling, select *Redo* and press ●.

Changing Image Size

Select from preset sizes or crop image.

Resize to Preset Size

1. **In Picture Editor menu,**
   Resize ➜ %

Resize
Wallpaper
Power On/Off
Incoming Call
Alarm

   Resize Window

2. **Select size** ➜ %

3. & **Specify image area**

   • If crop frame does not appear, omit 3.

Specifying Image Area
After 3, & ➜ 4
Zooming In/Out
After 3, B ➜ [] ➜ 4

4. %
   • Editing is complete.

Zooming In/Out
After 3, B ➜ [] ➜ 4

Cropping Images

1. **In Resize window, *Cut*** ➜ %

2. & **Move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop** ➜ B

3. & **Move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop** ➜ %

4. %
   • Editing is complete.

Applying Visual Effects

Render in sepia tones or add blur, etc.

1. **In Picture Editor menu,**
   Retouch ➜ %

2. **Select effect** ➜ %

3. %
   • Editing is complete.

Adding Frames

1. **In Picture Editor menu,**
   Frame ➜ %

2. **Select frame** ➜ %

3. %
   • Editing is complete.

7

Camera & Imaging

Advanced

🔊 ●Using additional editing options (**P.7-14** - **7-15**)

Face Arrange
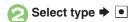
Make faces smiley, sad, etc.

1. **In Picture Editor menu, *Face Arrange* ➜ ●**

   Face Arrange
   Collage:Right-half
   Collage:Left-half
   Grin
   Mad
   Parts | ● |

   Face Arrange Menu

2. **Select type ➜ ●**

3. **●**
   - Editing is complete.

Important Face Arrange Usage Note
- When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

Adjusting Positions

Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image.

1. **In Face Arrange menu, ✉ ➜ ✉**
   - A rectangle appears with *+* in the upper left corner.

2. **✛ Move *+* to top left of face ➜ ✉**

3. **✛ Move *+* to bottom right of face**

   FaceLine

   Switch | Assign |

---

4. **●**

   - Face line is set. Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way.

5. **● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ *Save here* ➜ ●**
   - Image is saved as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted. Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.

Composite

Composite Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

Split Picture	Combine up to four reduced images into one
Merge Panorama	Combine two still images into one

Panorama Images

Panorama Image Effects:

Near View	Best suited for close-up shots
Document	Use for images with text
Standard	Apply to other images

1️⃣ ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ●

2️⃣ *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ●

3️⃣ ▣ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ●

4️⃣ *Composite* ➡ ●

5️⃣ *Merge Panorama* ➡ ●

● File selected in 2️⃣ is set as left image.

6️⃣ *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ●

7️⃣ *EFFECT* ➡ ● ➡ Select effect ➡ ●

● Editing is complete.

8️⃣ When finished, ☒

● Merged image appears.

9️⃣ ●

🔟 Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●

Changing Images
After 8️⃣, select image ➡ ● ➡ ▣ ➡ Select image ➡ ●

Switching Image Positions
After 8️⃣, ▣

7

Camera & Imaging

Advanced

🔅 ●Combining reduced images (**P.7-15**)

7-11

Printing Images

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)
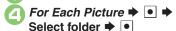
Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Phone/☒*

2. *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ *DPOF* ➡ ●

3. *Number of Copies* ➡ ●

4. *For Each Picture* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ●

5. Select image ➡ ☒

   Images

   Set copies of
   selected images.

   (00-99)

   00 Copy

6. Enter a number of copies to print ➡ ●
   - For more settings, repeat 5 - 6.

7. ☒

Applying a Number to All Images
In 4, *For All Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Enter a number of copies to print ➡ ●
Canceling Specified Number
In 6, enter *00* ➡ ● ➡ ☒
Viewing Current Print Settings
In 3, *Check Settings* ➡ ●

Using Printers

Connect handset to a Bluetooth®-compatible printer and print images in Pictures folder.
- Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.
- Some images may not be sent depending on file type and size.

1. ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* ➡ ●

2. Select image ➡ ☒ ➡ *Print* ➡ ●

3. *Via Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ Select printer ➡ ●

4. *Yes* ➡ ●
   - To cancel, press ☒.

When Authorization Code is Required
Enter Authorization Code ➡ ●

Advanced

🔖 ●Changing print settings (**P.7-15**)

Photo Camera & Video Camera

■ General

Opening Help	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, 🖂 ➡ *Help* ➡ ● ● Press 🔽 to toggle Help window for key assignments and indicator descriptions.

■ Capturing

Adjusting brightness	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, 🖂 ➡ *Shooting Settings* or *Record Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Exposure* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level
Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, 🖂 ➡ *Shooting Settings* or *Record Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Focus Setting* or *Focus* ➡ ● ➡ *Macro* ➡ ●
Adjusting focus manually	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, 🖂 ➡ *Shooting Settings* or *Record Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Focus Setting* or *Focus* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual Focus* ➡ ● ➡ 🔯 Adjust focus ➡ ● ● To readjust focus, press 🔁.
Locking focus	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, 🔁 ● Frame subject in center of Display first. ● To cancel Focus Lock, press 🔁.
Changing image quality	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, 🖂 ➡ *Picture Quality* or *Video Quality* ➡ ● ➡ Select quality ➡ ●

■ Saving

Activating automatic saving	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, 🖂 ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Save* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Setting save location	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, 🖂 ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Save Pictures to* or *Save Videos to* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●

Photo Camera

■ General

Changing shutter click sound	In Photo Viewfinder, 🖂 ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Shutter Sound* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ● Shutter click sound for consecutive shooting is fixed.
Hiding indicators	In Photo Viewfinder, 🖂 ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Display Icons* ➡ ● ➡ *Icon Off* ➡ ●
Selecting send option assigned to 🔽	In Photo Viewfinder, 🖂 ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Send Key* ➡ ● ➡ *Short Press* or *Long Press* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● Select send option separately for each key press method.
Releasing shutter remotely with a Bluetooth® watch	In Photo Viewfinder, press the corresponding button on Bluetooth® watch ● Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch and set Set Remote Shutter to *On* beforehand. For details, see the Bluetooth® watch guide.
Disabling remote shutter control via Bluetooth® watches	In Photo Viewfinder, 🖂 ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Remote Shutter* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ● Available when a Bluetooth® watch is registered.
Changing focus frame design	In Photo Viewfinder, 🖂 ➡ *Shooting Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Focus Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Focus Mark* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ●

7

Camera & Imaging

■ Capturing

Changing image size	In Photo Viewfinder, `⊠` ➡ *Picture Size* ➡ `●` ➡ Select size ➡ `●`
Changing scene setting by lighting or subject	In Photo Viewfinder, `⊠` ➡ *Scene* ➡ `●` ➡ Select scene ➡ `●`
Adjusting image color to lighting conditions	In Photo Viewfinder, `⊠` ➡ *Shooting Settings* ➡ `●` ➡ *White Balance* ➡ `●` ➡ Select mode ➡ `●`

Video Camera

■ Recording

Changing recording time/size	In Video Viewfinder, `⊠` ➡ *Record Time/Size* ➡ `●` ➡ *For Message* or *Extended* ➡ `●` ➡ Select size ➡ `●`
Enlarging Viewfinder size	In Video Viewfinder, `⊠` ➡ *Display Size* ➡ `●` ➡ *Enlarge* ➡ `●`
Recording video without sound	In Video Viewfinder, `⊠` ➡ *Microphone* ➡ `●` ➡ *Off* ➡ `●`

Editing Images

■ Picture Editor

	Start Here `●` ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ `●` ➡ *Pictures* ➡ `●` ➡ Select file ➡ `●` ➡ `⊠` ➡ *Edit* ➡ `●` ➡ *Picture Editor* ➡ `●` ➡ See below
Using additional editing options	**Changing Text/Outline Color** *Paste* ➡ `●` ➡ `⊠` ➡ Select text color ➡ `●` ➡ `⚲` ➡ Select outline color ➡ `●` ➡ `⫟` **Adding Text** *Paste* ➡ `●` ➡ *Free Text* ➡ `●` ➡ Enter text ➡ `●` ➡ `✥` Move text ➡ `●` **Adding Dates** *Paste* ➡ `●` ➡ *Date* ➡ `●` ➡ `✥` Move date ➡ `●` **Adding Stamps** *Stamp* ➡ `●` ➡ Select stamp ➡ `●` ➡ `✥` Move stamp ➡ `●` **Correcting Image Parameters** *Correction* ➡ `●` ➡ Select type ➡ `●` ➡ `●` **Rotating Images** *Rotate* ➡ `●` ➡ Select type ➡ `●` ➡ `●` **Converting File Format** *File Format* ➡ `●` ➡ *File Format* ➡ `●` ➡ Select format ➡ `●` ● Changing file format may affect file size/image quality. ● To return to Picture Editor menu, press `⫟`.
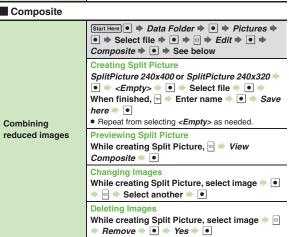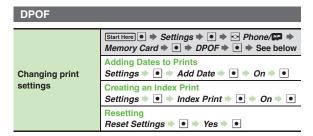
Using additional editing options	Start Here ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ▣ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Picture Editor* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Changing File Size *File Format* ➡ ● ➡ *File Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ● ● Changing file size may affect image quality. ● To return to Picture Editor menu, press ᴹᴱⁿᵘ.

■ **Composite**

Combining reduced images	Start Here ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ▣ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Composite* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Creating Split Picture *SplitPicture 240x400* or *SplitPicture 240x320* ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ When finished, ⁱᵛ ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ● ● Repeat from selecting *<Empty>* as needed.
	Previewing Split Picture While creating Split Picture, ▣ ➡ *View Composite* ➡ ●
	Changing Images While creating Split Picture, select image ➡ ● ➡ ▣ ➡ Select another ➡ ●
	Deleting Images While creating Split Picture, select image ➡ ▣ ➡ *Remove* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

DPOF

Changing print settings	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ▨ *Phone/*🖃 ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ *DPOF* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Adding Dates to Prints *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Add Date* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
	Creating an Index Print *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Index Print* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
	Resetting *Reset Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

7

Camera & Imaging

7-15

Mobile Camera

? **Mobile camera won't activate/ shuts down automatically**

- Battery may be low. (Video Camera does not activate if battery is low.) Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? **Cannot use Auto Save**

- Auto Save is not available when Save Pictures to is set to *Ask Each Time*.

Editing Images

? **Cannot save/send edited images**

- Edited images may be too large to save or send via mail.

DPOF

? **Cannot specify print settings properly**

- If Memory Card image files have been deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, reset print settings and start over with settings.

8

**Media Player &
S! Applications**

8-1

Media Basics

Use Media Player to play music/video on 001SH.

● Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Media Player directly.
● Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.

Music File Support

My Music
(Handset/Memory Card)
Downloads/Transferred Files

Video File Support

My Videos
(Handset/Memory Card)
Downloads/Recorded Files

Playback Precautions

● Media Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
● Playback stops for incoming calls.
● If battery is low, Media Player will not play. Playback stops if battery runs low during playback.
● Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
● Handset plays media while it downloads (streaming/progressive download). Packet transmission fees apply even while playback is paused.

Compatibility

● Files transferred from PCs cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.
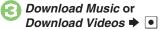
Downloading Media Files

Download media files from the Internet.
Read information (price, expiry date, etc.)
on the source site.

1 ● ➡ *Media* ➡ ●

> 15:05
> Media Player
> 🎵 Music
> 📼 Videos
> 🌐 Streaming

2 *Music* or *Videos* ➡ ●

3 *Download Music* or
Download Videos ➡ ●

● Follow the links to download media.

Saving Music Files from PCs

● Use software to convert music file format.
● For software usage and specifications, see
the provider's website, etc.
● SoftBank Mobile does not guarantee
compatibility with any software.
● USB Cable may be purchased separately.

Handling Transferred Files
● Copyright laws limit duplicated material
to private use only.
● Files created with PC software, etc. may
not play.
● Comply with copyright and other
intellectual property laws when using
obtained files.

Saving AAC Files

Convert PC music files to 001SH-compatible
format (**P.15-21**), then save to corresponding
Memory Card folder (**P.15-23**) via Card
Reader Mode.
Install USB Cable driver beforehand.

Playing Music

1. **●** ➡ *Media* ➡ **●** ➡ *Music* ➡ **●**

2. *My Music* ➡ **●** ➡ **⊙** **Select tab (folder)**

   Music Playlists Window

3. *All Music* ➡ **●**

4. **Select file** ➡ **●**

   Music Playback Window

   ● Album art appears for compatible Chaku-Uta Full® files.

Using Other Functions while Playing Music
After ④, 🔲 or 🔲
■ To stop playback, follow these steps in Standby:
🔲 ➡ *Yes* ➡ **●**

Searching Music Files
After ③, 🔲 ➡ *Search* ➡ **●** ➡ Enter search text ➡ **●**

Lyric Display-Compatible Files
● Press 🔲 to display lyrics.

Music Playback Operations

Replay	⊙ (Long Press: Rewind*, Double Press: Skip Backward)
Skip Forward	⊙ (Long Press: Fast Forward*)
Volume Down	⊡ (Long Press: Mute)
Volume Up or Cancel Mute	⊡
Pause	**●**
Stop	In Pause, 🔲
Switch Sound Output	🔲 (Long)
Open Help	0¹²

*Release for playback.

Music Playback Window Description

1	Title	**6**	Elapsed time
2	Artist name	**7**	Volume
3	Track number	**8**	Information link
4	Status	**9**	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode		

Advanced

�糸 ●Resuming from stopped point ●Specifying start point ●Accessing linked information ●Switching audio output to wireless device ●Playing repeatedly or randomly ●Changing Sound Effects (**P.8-8**)

Playing Video

1 ● → *Media* → ● → *Videos* → ●

2 *My Videos* → ● → *Memory Card* or *Phone Memory* → ●

Playlist
- All Videos
- Playlist 1
- Playlist 2
- Playlist 3

Video Playlists Window

3 *All Videos* → ●

4 Select file → ●

Video Player

Video Playback Window

5 🔙 → Playback stops

Searching Video Files
After 3, 🖥 → *Search* → ● → Enter search text → ●
At Alarm Time
● Playback pauses.
Video Recorded on Other Devices
● Video image may appear rotated.
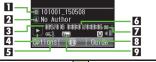
Video Playback Operations

For pause, volume up/down, sound output or help, see **P.8-4** "Music Playback Operations."

Replay	⬅ (Long Press: Rewind*, Double Press: Skip Backward)
Skip Forward	➡ (Long Press in Pause: Advance Frame, Long Press: Fast Forward*)
Interface On/Off	⬆
Toggle Display Size	2
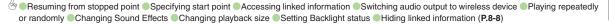
*Release for playback.

Video Playback Window Description

- 1 ☐ 101001_150508
- 2 ♪ No Author
- 3 ▶ 003/010 00:08 17/00:36
- 4
- 5 Options
- 6
- 7
- 8 Guide
- 9

1	Title	6	Elapsed time
2	Author name	7	Volume
3	Clip number	8	Information link
4	Status	9	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode		

Advanced

✍ ●Resuming from stopped point ●Specifying start point ●Accessing linked information ●Switching audio output to wireless device ●Playing repeatedly or randomly ●Changing Sound Effects ●Changing playback size ●Setting Backlight status ●Hiding linked information (**P.8-8**)

Using Playlists

Playlists store playback orders. Add favorite media files to Playlists, or organize files by artist/genre.
Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Music or All Videos.

Adding to Playlist

Follow these steps to add a music file to プレイリスト1:

1. ● ➡ *Media* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ●

2. *My Music* ➡ ●

My Music
Music | Ringtones
All Music
プレイリスト1
プレイリスト2
プレイリスト3

Playlists Window

3. *All Music* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠

4. *Add to Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ プレイリスト1 ➡ ●

Renaming Playlists

1. **In Playlists window, select Playlist** ➡ ⊠

2. *Edit List Title* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter name** ➡ ●

8 Media Player & S! Applications

Advanced

🖑 [Music Files] ●Organizing Playlists ●Sorting files ●Opening properties ●Downloading Contents Keys (**P.8-9**)
[Video Files] ●Organizing Playlists ●Sorting files ●Downloading Contents Keys ●Opening properties (**P.8-9**)

Using S! Applications

Try out the preloaded S! Applications or download and use 001SH-compatible S! Applications, including games.
Refer to the S! Application's help menu or the source website, etc. for operational instructions.

1 ● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ●

2 *S! Appli Library* ➡ ●

S! Appli Library

3 Select application ➡ ●

Network S! Applications
● A message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. Follow onscreen instructions.

Incoming Calls
● Incoming calls automatically pause S! Application.

Exiting S! Applications

1 ☎

2 *End* ➡ ●

Pausing S! Applications
In ➋, *Suspend* ➡ ●
Resuming S! Applications
● ➡ *Resume* ➡ ●
■ Select *Cancel* to open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused. (Additional function activation may be disabled depending on the S! Application.)
■ Select *End* to exit the S! Application.

Advanced

🖐 ●Downloading S! Applications ●Adjusting S! Application sound volume ●Canceling surround effect ●Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions, etc. ●Setting S! Application to activate in Standby ●Setting Permissions ●Opening properties ●Moving S! Applications to Memory Card
●Changing S! Application settings ●Deleting S! Applications ●Restoring default S! Application settings ●Restoring default S! Appli Library
●Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 001SH ●Opening Java™ license information (**P.8-10** - **8-11**)

Media Playback

■ **Music & Video**

Resuming from stopped point	● ➡ *Media* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* or *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Last Played Music* or *Last Played Video* ➡ ●
Specifying start point	During playback, ▣ ➡ *Time Search* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●
Accessing linked information	During playback, ▣ ➡ *Access Web Link* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Switching audio output to wireless device	● ➡ *Media* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* or *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ 🅑 *Sound Output* ➡ ● ➡ *Bluetooth Device* ➡ ●

■ **Music**

	Start Here During playback, ▣ ➡ *Playback Mode* ➡ ● ➡ See below
Playing repeatedly or randomly	**Repeat One File** *Repeat* ➡ ●
	Repeat All Files *Repeat All* ➡ ●
	Play Randomly *Random* ➡ ●
	Repeat Randomly *Random Repeat* ➡ ●
Changing Sound Effects	During playback, ▣ ➡ *Sound Effects* ➡ ● ➡ Select effect ➡ ●

■ **Video**

	Start Here During playback, ▣ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Playback Mode* ➡ ● ➡ See below
Playing repeatedly or randomly	**Repeat One File** *Repeat* ➡ ●
	Repeat All Files *Repeat All* ➡ ●
	Play Randomly *Random* ➡ ●
Changing Sound Effects	During playback, ▣ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Sound Effects* ➡ ● ➡ Select effect ➡ ●
Changing playback size	During playback, ▣ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Display Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●
Setting Backlight status	During playback, ▣ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Backlight* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● Selecting *Normal Settings* applies Display Backlight settings.
Hiding linked information	During playback, ▣ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Web Link Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Managing Music Files

	Start Here ● ➡ *Media* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ● ➡ *My Music* ➡ ● ➡ ⌅ Select tab (folder) ➡ See below
Organizing Playlists	**Adding New Playlists** ⌨ ➡ *Add New Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
	Deleting Playlists Select Playlist ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Delete Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Deleting Playlist Files Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Changing File Order Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Change Order* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ●
Sorting files	● ➡ *Media* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ● ➡ *My Music* ➡ ● ➡ ⌅ Select tab (folder) ➡ *All Music* ➡ ● ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Opening properties	● ➡ *Media* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ● ➡ *My Music* ➡ ● ➡ ⌅ Select tab (folder) ➡ Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
Downloading Contents Keys	● ➡ *Media* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ● ➡ *My Music* ➡ ● ➡ ⌅ Select tab (folder) ➡ Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file (with 🎵) ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.

Managing Video Files

	Start Here ● ➡ *Media* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Card* or *Phone Memory* ➡ ● ➡ See below
Organizing Playlists	**Adding New Playlists** ⌨ ➡ *Add New Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
	Deleting Playlists Select Playlist ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Delete Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Deleting Playlist Files Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Changing File Order Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Change Order* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ●
Sorting files	● ➡ *Media* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Card* or *Phone Memory* ➡ ● ➡ *All Videos* ➡ ● ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Downloading Contents Keys	● ➡ *Media* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Card* or *Phone Memory* ➡ ● ➡ *All Videos* ➡ ● ➡ Select file (with ⌖) ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Opening properties	● ➡ *Media* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Card* or *Phone Memory* ➡ ● ➡ Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

8

Media Player & S! Applications

8-9

S! Applications

Downloading S! Applications	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ *Download S! Appli* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Adjusting S! Application sound volume	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Application Volume* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●
Canceling surround effect	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Surround* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions, etc.	Start Here ● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Calls & Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Showing Calls** Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Show Call Notice* ➡ ● **Pausing S! Application for Incoming Mail** *Incoming Message* ➡ ● ➡ *Message Priority* ➡ ● **Showing Alarm Notice** *Alarm* ➡ ● ➡ *Alarm Notice* ➡ ● **Showing S! Appli Notice** *Notification* ➡ ● ➡ *Start Notice* ➡ ●

Setting S! Application to activate in Standby	Start Here ● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Activating Screensaver** *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Screensaver* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● **Setting Screensaver** *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ⌨ ➡ *As Screensaver* ➡ ● ● Switch On/Off is set to *On*. ● *As Screensaver* appears for compatible S! Applications. ● Screensaver may not start or operate correctly when an external device (Headphones, etc.) is connected to handset. **Changing Screensaver Activation Time** *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Screensaver* ➡ ● ➡ *Activation Time* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ● **Disabling Automatic Screensaver Restart** *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Screensaver* ➡ ● ➡ *Stop Auto Start* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Setting Permissions	Start Here ● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Permission* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Customizing Permissions for S! Appli Operations** Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● **Resetting Permission Settings** *Reset Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Opening properties	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

Moving S! Applications to Memory Card	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ ➡ **Select application** ➡ ● (☐ /✔) ➡ **Complete selection** ➡ 🖻 ➡ *Move to Card* ➡ ● ● When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose *Yes* or *No* and press ●. ● Some S! Applications may not be moved to Memory Card.
Changing S! Application settings	[Start Here] ● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Setting Backlight Status *Backlight* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ **Select option** ➡ ● ● Selecting *Normal Settings* applies Display Backlight settings.
	Disabling Backlight Flashing *Backlight* ➡ ● ➡ *Blink* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
	Disabling Vibration *Vibration* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Deleting S! Applications	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ **Select application** ➡ 🖻 ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Handset Code may be required. ● Cancel Screensaver to delete Screensaver S! Application.

Restoring default S! Application settings	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set to Default* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Restoring default S! Appli Library	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory All Clear* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Memory All Clear deletes all downloaded S! Applications.
Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 001SH	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Synchronization* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Opening Java™ license information	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Information* ➡ ●

8

Media Player & S! Applications

Music

? **How do I delete files in All Music?**

- Delete All Music files in My Music via Data Folder (Music or Ring Songs·Tones).

Video

? **How do I delete files in All Videos?**

- Delete All Videos files via Data Folder (Videos).

? **Cannot play video files**

- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.

S! Applications

? **Cannot move S! Applications to Memory Card**

- Memory Card memory may be low.

? **S! Applications do not pause for incoming transmissions despite *Calls & Alarms* settings**

- Regardless of setting, a notice appears for Screensaver S! Applications.

? **(S! Appli Notification indicator) does not disappear**

- To delete , open the corresponding Information item as follows:
  ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Information* ➡ ● ➡ *Notification* ➡ ●

9

Handy Extras

Calendar

Opening Calendar

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ●

Calendar Window

Toggling View

Press ⊡ to toggle Calendar window:

1Month View   2Month View

Week View

Key Assignments

■ **All Views**

Open Previous Page	✻
Open Next Page	#
Go to Current Date	5
Open Help	0

■ **1Month/2Month View**

Select Date	✛

■ **Week View**

Select Date	◁▷
Select Time Block	▽△

Advanced

● Changing default view ● Jumping to specified date ● Changing date color ● Selecting task view option ● Adding stamps (1Month View) ● Hiding
schedules ● Saving/editing additional holidays ● Hiding/showing holidays (**P.9-32**)

Saving Schedules

Follow these steps to save subject, Category, start/end date/time, Alarm and schedule details:
(Enter Subject or Description to save entry.)
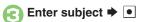
1 **In Calendar window, select date ➡ ●**

2 **<Add New Entry> ➡ ●**

3 **Enter subject ➡ ●**

4 **⊡ Preset ➡ Select Category ➡ ●**

5 **Enter start date/time ➡ ●**

6 **End: ➡ ● ➡ Enter end date/time ➡ ●**

7 **Alarm: ➡ ●**

8 **Alarm Time: ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ➡ ☞**

9 **Description: ➡ ● ➡ Enter schedule details ➡ ●**

10 **☞ ➡ Saved**

Selecting Category from History
In **4**, ⊡ *History* ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ From **5**
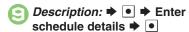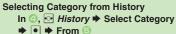
Selecting Custom Category
In **4**, ⊡ *Definable* ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ From **5**

All-Day Schedule
In **5**, ☷ ➡ ● ➡ From **5**

Custom Alarm Time
In **8**, *Alarm Time:* ➡ ● ➡ *Other* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date/time ➡ ● ➡ ☞ ➡ From **5**

Category

History | Preset | Definable

⬤No Category
◉Private
🏠Feast
♥Date
🚌Travel
🚗Drive
💰Shopping
🍴Dinner
✐Hobby

New Entry

Category:
✕Meeting
Start:
10/10/01 16:00
End:
10/10/01 16:00
Alarm:
No Alarm

9

Handy Extras

Advanced

✎ ●Setting Location ●Creating Categories ●Saving repetitive schedules ●Editing entries ●Changing Alarm tone/video & duration ●Changing Alarm volume ●Selecting Vibration option ●Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (And more on **P.9-33** - **9-34**)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

Calendar Alarm

Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby
● While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press ●, ⌬ or ⌦.

Stopping Alarm to Open Schedule
● While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than ●, ⌬ or ⌦.

When Another Function is Active
● Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls
● Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Schedules/Tasks

❶ **In Calendar window, select date ➡ ●**

Schedule List

❷ **Select schedule or task ➡ ●**

❸ **⌬ ➡ Standby returns**

Opening Task List
In ❷, select task ➡ 🖃 ➡ *Go to Tasks* ➡ ●

Accessing Secret Entries
[Calendar Window] 🖃 ➡ *Unlock Temporarily* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Opening Related Message

Open schedule-related messages saved from Messaging message list.

❶ **In schedule list, select schedule ➡ ●**

❷ **🖃 ➡ *Related Mail* ➡ ●**
● Related message opens.
● To return to schedule window, press ⌦.

Deleting Message from Schedule
After ❶, ● ➡ *Related Mail:* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ 🖃

🔟

Advanced

👆 ●Searching entries ●Checking memory status (**P.9-34**)

Information Link

Set to show or hide the following information in Calendar.

Reservation List	TV Timer and TV Recording Timer entries
Birthday	Birthdays entered in Phone Book
What is today? (Japanese)	Preset anniversaries, commemorative days, etc.

1 **In Calendar window,** ⊠

2 *Calendar Settings* ➔ ●

3 *Data to Show* ➔ ●

4 **Select item** ➔ ● (☐/☑)

5 ⊻

Editing TV Timer/TV Recording Timer

1 **In schedule list, select entry** ➔ ⊠

2 *Edit* ➔ ●

3 **Edit** ➔ ⊻

Deleting Entries
In ②, *Delete* ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●
■ Timer is canceled.

Making Birthday Calls

1 **In schedule list, select entry** ➔ ⊠

2 *Call* ➔ ● ➔ **Select phone number** ➔ ●
● Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.

Sending Birthday Messages
In ②, *Mail* ➔ ● ➔ **Select number/address** ➔ ● ➔ **Complete message** ➔ ⊻
■ Omit number/address selection step if only one number or address is saved.
■ For phone numbers, select *S! Mail* or *SMS* and press ●.

Deleting Schedules

■ **One Entry**

1 **In schedule list, select schedule** ➔ ⊠
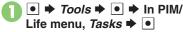
2 *Delete* ➔ ● ➔ *This Appointment* ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●

■ **All Entries of the Day**

1 **In Calendar window, select date** ➔ ⊠

2 *Delete* ➔ ● ➔ *All This Day* ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●

Advanced

🔧 ●Deleting all entries ●Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View) ●Deleting entries by specifying month (1Month View) ●Deleting entries in two months (2Month View) (**P.9-34**)

9

Handy Extras

9-5

Tasks

Saving Tasks

Follow these steps to save subject, due date/time, Alarm and task details:
(Enter Subject or Description to save entry.)

1 ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ In PIM/ Life menu, *Tasks* ➜ ●

```
        Tasks
 All  Incomplete Completed
⇨ <Add New Entry>
```

2 *<Add New Entry>* ➜ ●

3 Enter subject ➜ ●

```
    Due Date & Time


  2010 / 10 / 01


    15 : 05

■No limit
```

4 Enter due date/time ➜ ●

```
      New Entry
Subject:
Birthday party
Due Date:
10/10/01 18:00
Alarm:
No Alarm
```

5 *Alarm:* ➜ ●

6 *Alarm Time:* ➜ ● ➜ Select time ➜ ● ➜ ⊠

7 *Description:* ➜ ● ➜ Enter task details ➜ ●

8 ⊠ ➜ Saved

Task with No Due Date/Time
  In 4, ⊠ ➜ ● ➜ From 7
Custom Alarm Time
  In 6, *Alarm Time:* ➜ ● ➜ *Other* ➜ ● ➜ Enter date/time ➜ ● ➜ ⊠ ➜ From 7

Advanced

⌔ ●Hiding tasks ●Editing tasks ●Setting priority ●Changing Alarm tone/video & duration ●Changing Alarm volume ●Selecting Vibration option ●Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (**P.9-34** - **9-35**)

9

Handy Extras

9-6

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby
● While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press ●, ☎ or ▦.
Stopping Alarm to Open Task
● While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than ●, ☎ or ▦.
When Another Function is Active
● Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.
Incoming Calls
● Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Tasks

1 ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ In PIM/ Life menu, *Tasks* ➜ ●

Task List

● Use ⊡ to open Completed or Incomplete task list.

2 Select task ➜ ●

3 ☎ ➜ Standby returns

Accessing Secret Entries
After ❶, ▤ ➜ *Unlock Temporarily* ➜ ● ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ●
Marking Tasks as Completed
After ❶, select task ➜ ▱

Deleting Tasks

■ **One Entry**
1 In task list, select task ➜ ▤
2 *Delete* ➜ ●
3 *This Task* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

■ **All Completed Tasks**
1 In task list, ▤
2 *Delete* ➜ ● ➜ *All Comp. Tasks* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

9

Handy Extras

Advanced

⊛ ●Searching tasks ●Sorting tasks by priority ●Checking memory status ●Deleting all tasks (**P.9-35**)

Using Alarms
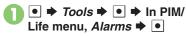
Setting Alarm

Follow these steps to set Alarm to sound at a specific time on a specific day of the week: (Set Snooze--Alarm repeats at set interval--Alarm Volume and Duration.)

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/ Life menu, *Alarms* ➡ ●

> ```
> ◦Til              15:05◻
>        Alarms
> --:--
> --:--
> --:--
> ```
> Alarm List

2 *--:--* ➡ ● ➡ Enter hour (24-hour format) ➡ Enter minutes ➡ ●

> ```
> ◦Til              15:05◻
>      Set Alarm
> Time:
> 06:00
> Subject:
> Alarm 1
> ```

3 *Repeat:* ➡ ●

> ```
> ◦Til              15:05◻
>        Repeat
> ◉ Once
> ○ Every Day (All)
> ○ Selected Days
> ```

4 *Selected Days* ➡ ●

5 Select day ➡ ● (☐/✓) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ▯

6 *Snooze:* ➡ ●

7 Select interval ➡ ●
● For custom intervals, select *Other*.

8 *Alarm Volume:* ➡ ●

9 Adjust level ➡ ●

10 *Duration:* ➡ ●

11 Select time ➡ ●
● For custom Duration, select *Other*.

12 ▯ ➡ Saved
● For more settings, repeat 2 - 12.

13 ☎ ➡ Standby returns

Activating Alarm Once or Daily
In 4, *Once* or *Every Day (All)* ➡ ●
➡ From 6
Selecting/Canceling All Days
In 5, ▭ ➡ *Check All* or *Uncheck All*
➡ ●
Excluding Holidays
In 5, select day ➡ ● (☐/✓) ➡
Complete selection ➡ *Except Holidays* ➡ ● (✓) ➡ ▯ ➡ From 6

9

Handy Extras

9-8

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

Stopping Alarm
● Press a key.
When Another Function is Active
● Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.
Incoming Calls
● Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

When Snooze is Set

Alarm repeats at the set interval. Other Alarms do not activate while handset is Snoozing.

Canceling Snooze
  While Snoozing, ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
■ Snooze is automatically canceled after a period of time.

Canceling Alarm

1 In Alarm list, select entry ➡ ✉

2 *Switch Off* ➡ ●
● Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry
  In **2**, *Switch On* ➡ ●

Deleting Alarm

■ **One Entry**

1 In Alarm list, select entry ➡ ✉

2 *Reset Alarm* ➡ ●

3 *Yes* ➡ ●

■ **All Entries**

1 In Alarm list, select entry ➡ ✉

2 *Clear All* ➡ ●

3 *Yes* ➡ ●

9

Handy Extras

Using Wakeup TV
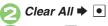
Setting Wakeup TV

Follow these steps to activate TV at a specific time on a specific day of the week:

● Complete TV Area setup beforehand.
● TV may not activate in poor signal conditions.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/ Life menu, *Wakeup TV* ➡ ●

> **Till** 15:05
> Wakeup TV
> --:--
> --:--
> --:--
>
> Wakeup TV List

2 *--:--* ➡ ● ➡ Enter hour (24-hour format) ➡ Enter minutes ➡ ●

> **Till** 15:05
> Set Alarm
> Time:
> 08:00
> Repeat:
> Once
>
> Wakeup TV Menu

3 *Repeat:* ➡ ●

4 *Selected Days* ➡ ●

5 Select day ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ⊠

6 *Channel:* ➡ ●

7 Select channel ➡ ●

8 ⊠ ➡ Saved
● For more settings, repeat **2** - **8**.

9 ☎ ➡ Standby returns

Activating TV Once or Daily
In **4**, *Once* or *Every Day (All)* ➡ ●
➡ From **6**

Selecting/Canceling All Days
In **5**, ⊟ ➡ *Check All* or *Uncheck All*
➡ ●

Excluding Holidays
In **5**, select day ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡
Complete selection ➡ *Except
Holidays* ➡ ● (☑) ➡ ⊠ ➡ From **5**

Canceling Alarm
● Alarm activates at Wakeup TV time. To cancel Alarm, follow these steps:
[Wakeup TV Menu] *Alarm On/Off:* ➡
● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ From **8**

Adjusting Alarm Volume
[Wakeup TV Menu] *Alarm Volume:* ➡
● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ● ➡ From **8**

9

Handy Extras

Advanced

🔧 ●Editing entries ●Changing Alarm tone/video ●Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (**P.9-36**)

At Wakeup TV Time

TV activates after Alarm.

Stopping Alarm Instantly
● While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key.
When Another Function is Active
● TV may not activate depending on the function.
After TV is On for a Period of Time
● A confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and press ● to exit TV.
Incoming Calls
● Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. End the call to activate TV.

Canceling Wakeup TV

1. **In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➜ ⌨**

2. *Wakeup TV Off* ➜ ●
   ● Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry
   In ②, *Wakeup TV On* ➜ ●
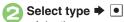
Deleting Wakeup TV

■ **One Entry**

1. **In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➜ ⌨**

2. *Reset Alarm* ➜ ●

3. *Yes* ➜ ●

■ **All Entries**

1. **In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➜ ⌨**

2. *Clear All* ➜ ●

3. *Yes* ➜ ●

Playing Animation with Music & Illumination

Play preset animations or downloaded
Flash® files with music and illumination.
Set playback time and volume as needed.

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
Life menu, *Relaxation Time*
➡ ●

2. Select type ➡ ●
   ● Animation appears.
   ● For *Flash*®, select a file and press ●.
   ● Message appears when Playback
   Time is set to *Continuous Play*
   (except when charging battery);
   press ● to proceed.

Setting Relaxation Time

Follow these steps to set playback time
and volume:

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
Life menu, *Relaxation Time*
➡ ●

2. *Settings* ➡ ●

   ```
   ┌──────────────────────┐
   │ ⁴Tﮚ           15:05  ▥│
   │       Settings        │
   │ Playback Time         │
   │ 5 min.                │
   │ Volume                │
   │ Level:3               │
   │                       │
   │                       │
   └──────────────────────┘
   ```
   Settings Menu

3. *Playback Time* ➡ ●

4. Select time ➡ ●
   ● For custom playback time, select *Other*.

5. *Volume* ➡ ●

6. Adjust level ➡ ●

7. ☎ ➡ Standby returns

9
Handy Extras

Managing Household Expenses
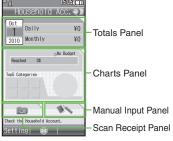
Saving Entries

Scanning Receipts

Scan receipts with mobile camera to enter date, expense items, fees/prices and total amount automatically.
Scan may fail if receipt is too long, folded, faded, etc.; some formats are not supported.

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ **In PIM/ Life menu,** *Household Accounts* ➡ ●

Household Accounts Window

- Totals Panel
- Charts Panel
- Manual Input Panel
- Scan Receipt Panel

2. **Select scan receipt panel** ➡ ●

3. **Frame receipt on Display**

Scan Window

- Frame date, expense items and total amount. Align text parallel to reference lines.

4. ●
- To cancel, press 🔄.

5. ● ➡ **Scan results appear**

- To add, delete or edit expense items, see **P.9-14** "Entering Manually."

6. 🔄
- Entry is saved.

Opening Operation Guide [Scan Window] 🔄
■ Press ● to return to scan window.

■ **Key Assignments in Scan Window**

Toggle Focus Mode	3
Focus Lock	🔄
Adjust Brightness	🔄
Open Help	0

Entering Manually

1 **In Household Accounts window, select manual input panel ➡ ●**

Expense Input Window

2 **Select date panel ➡ ● ➡ Enter date ➡ ●**

3 *Shop* **➡ ● ➡ Select shop/ facility ➡ ●**

4 *Paid* **➡ ● ➡ Select payment method ➡ ●**

5 *Item* **➡ ●**

6 *Item* **➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●**

7 *Category* **➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ●**

8 *Value* **➡ ● ➡ Enter amount ➡ ● ➡ ⚲**

9 ⚲ **➡ Saved**

Adding Expense Items
 After ❺, select item field ➡ 🔲 ➡
 Add Items ➡ ● ➡ From ❻
Deleting Expense Items
 After ❺, select item ➡ 🔲 ➡ *Delete*
 ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ❾
Changing Categories of All Items at Once
 [Expense Input Window] *Change* ➡
 ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ ❾

9 **Handy Extras**

Advanced

🔲 ●Renaming icon labels ●Exporting Household Accounts data (**P.9-36** - **9-37**)

9-14
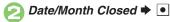
Changing Settings

Specify closing day, closing month and budget for the month.

1 **In Household Accounts window,** ▣

Account Setup Menu

2 *Date/Month Closed* ➡ ●

● Press ▣ to change default closing date (end of the month); use ⊙ to move between date and month fields.

3 **Enter date/month** ➡ ●

4 *Yes* ➡ ●

5 *Budget* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter amount** ➡ ●

6 [CLEAR/BACK] ➡ **Household Accounts window returns**

Restricting Access to Household Accounts by Handset Code
[Account Setup Menu] *Locks* ➡ ●
➡ *On* ➡ ●
Resetting Household Accounts
[Account Setup Menu] *Master Reset*
➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Opening Expense Records

Opening Entries

1. **In Household Accounts window, select totals panel ➡ ●**

2. **Select date ➡ ●**

   Daily Expense Log

3. **Select entry ➡ ●**
   ● Details appear.

Deleting an Entry
[Daily Expense Log] Select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete Receipt* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Deleting All Entries
[Daily Expense Log] ⊠ ➡ *Delete Day Data* or *Delete Month Data* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Viewing Expense Trends

Follow these steps to view monthly expenses, budgets and balances:

1. **In Household Accounts window, select charts panel ➡ ●**

2. ***Results by Month* ➡ ●**

   Results by Month Window

   ● Press ● to toggle budget and balance.
   ● Use ◄► to open previous or next year.

Viewing Other Expense Trends
In ②, select item ➡ ●
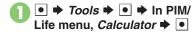
Monthly Result Charts

   Balances

● In Balance chart, gray area of each bar represents balance; bar turns pink when balance is zero or less.
● In Expenses chart, orange bar extends to the left as monthly expense increases, with the middle of the chart indicating average monthly expense for the year.

Using Calculator

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
Life menu, *Calculator* ➡ ●

Calculator Window

2 Use Keypad to enter digits
➡ Calculate

3 ☎ ➡ Standby returns

Key Assignments	
+ (Add)	🔾
− (Subtract)	🔾
× (Multiply)	🔾
÷ (Divide)	🔾
= (Sum)	●
C·CE (Clear)	🔾
CM (Clear Memory)	🔾
RM (Recall Memory)	🔾
M+ (Add to Memory)	🔾
. (Decimal)	🔾
+/- (Positive/Negative Value)	🔾
% (Percentage)	🔾

Memory Calculation
● Clear Memory before starting new Memory calculations.
● Numbers saved in Memory remain until powering off.

Incoming Calls
● Calculations are not affected. End the call to return to Calculator.

Using % Function
Use 🔾 to find definite percentage of a known value.
Example: Calculate 30% of 800,000
　Enter *800,000* ➡ x ➡ 30 ➡ %
■ *240,000* appears.

9

Handy Extras

Advanced

9-17

Adding Expenses

Entering Expenses

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
Life menu, *Expenses Memo*
➡ ●

   15:05
   Expenses Memo
   List 1
   List 2
   List 3
   Expenses Memo Menu

2. Select list ➡ ●

3. *Add New* ➡ ●

4. Enter amount ➡ ●

   15:05
   Category
   ● No Category
   ○ Miscellaneous
   ○ Transportation …
   ○ Food Expenses

5. Select Category ➡ ● ➡
Saved

Saving under Custom Category
In ⑤, *Other* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
Renaming Lists
[Expenses Memo Menu] Select list
➡ ⊠ ➡ *Edit Title* ➡ ● ➡ Enter
name ➡ ●
Resetting All List Names
[Expenses Memo Menu] ⊠ ➡ *Reset
Title* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Checking Entries

1. In Expenses Memo menu,
select list ➡ ●

   15:05
   List 1
   ⇨
   Add New
   1)10/10/01 15:05
   Miscell…   5040
   Expenses Memo List

2. ☎ ➡ Standby returns

Saving Entries to Notepad
[Expenses Memo List] Select entry
➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save to Notepad* ➡ ●

Deleting Entries
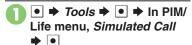
■ **One Entry**

1. In Expenses Memo list,
select entry ➡ ⊠

2. *Delete Item* ➡ ●

3. *Yes* ➡ ●

■ **All Entries**

1. In Expenses Memo list,
select entry ➡ ⊠

2. *Delete All* ➡ ●

3. *Yes* ➡ ●
   ● All entries on the list are deleted.

9

Handy Extras

Advanced

🔎 ●Changing Category of saved entry ●Changing amount ●Renaming Categories (**P.9-37**)

Faking Incoming Calls

Handset rings to emulate an incoming call.
- Save name and phone number to show as Caller ID.
- Ringer may be muted by handset settings. To override Silent setting, see **P.9-37**.

Setting Simulated Call

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Simulated Call* ➡ ●

   ```
   ·Till              15:05 
        Simulated Call
   Receive Simulated...

   Switch On/Off
   Off
   Set Caller
   <Empty>
   ```
   Simulated Call Menu

2. *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

3. *Set Caller* ➡ ●

   ```
   ·Till              15:05 
         Set Caller
   Name:
   <Empty>
   Phone Number:
   <Empty>
   ```

4. *Name:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

5. *Phone Number:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter phone number ➡ ● ➡ ⊠

6. *Assign Tone* ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ●

7. ⊠ ➡ PIM/Life menu returns

When Name and Phone Number are Unset
- Handset rings with Caller ID "Withheld."

Canceling Simulated Call
   [Simulated Call Menu] *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠

Setting Wait Time
   [Simulated Call Menu] *Receive Timing* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ➡ ⊠

Using Simulated Call

1. **With handset closed, ▢ (Long)**
   - Handset rings and incoming Voice Call window opens.
   - Ringtone stops after a period of time.

2. **In incoming Voice Call window, press** ⌕
   - Voice Call window opens. (Softkeys are dummies.)

3. ⌐ ➡ **Standby returns**

When Receive Timing is Not *Immediately*
- Press ⌐ or ⌹ during wait time to cancel Simulated Call activation.
- Simulated Call activation is canceled by incoming calls, Alarms, etc. during wait time.

9

Handy Extras

Advanced

✎ ● Starting via Simulated Call menu ● Clearing caller information ● Overriding Silent volume setting (**P.9-37**)

Using Stopwatch

Stopwatch stops if battery runs low.

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◌
    Clock/Gauge ➡ *Stopwatch*
    ➡ ●

    Stopwatch Window

2. ● ➡ **Stopwatch starts**

3. ● ➡ **Stopwatch stops**
    ● Press ● to resume.

4. ☎ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡
    Stopwatch ends
    ● Records are deleted when
    Stopwatch ends.

Recording Lap Times
    While Stopwatch is running, ▣
Saving Records to Notepad
    After ❸, ▣ ➡ *Save to Notepad* ➡ ●
Resetting Records
    After ❸, ▧ ➡ From ❷
Incoming Calls
● Stopwatch is not affected by incoming
  calls. End the call to return.

Using Countdown Timer

1️⃣ ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Countdown Timer* ➡ ●

Timer Entry Window
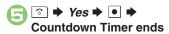
2️⃣ Enter minutes ➡ Enter seconds ➡ ●

Countdown Timer Window

● Press 🔲 to change time.

3️⃣ ● ➡ Countdown starts
● Press ● to stop/resume countdown.

4️⃣ Set time elapses ➡ Tone sounds

5️⃣ 🔲 ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Countdown Timer ends

Using Timer Records
After 1️⃣, 🔲 ➡ Select record ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ From 3️⃣
Resetting Countdown Timer
Stop countdown and 🔲
Incoming Calls
● Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

When Set Time Elapses

Tone sounds.

Timer Expired

Stopping Tone Instantly
● Press ● or 🔲. (Tone stops automatically after a period of time.)
When Timer Time Elapsed during a Call
● Tone sounds after the call.

9

Handy Extras

9-21

Opening World Clock

Auto World Clock

Powering on outside Japan automatically sets World Clock; the local time for your current location appears in Standby. Upon returning to Japan, original World Clock setting and Clock view will return.

Disabling Auto World Clock

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Date & Time* ➡ ●

2 *Auto World Clock* ➡ ●

3 *Disabled* ➡ ●

Setting World Clock Manually

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *World Clock* ➡ ●

```
          World Clock
Tokyo                                    Local Time
My Home City                              Zone
  🏠           15:05
         2010/10/01 Fri

Tokyo                                    World Time
The Other City                            Zone
  ●           15:05
         2010/10/01 Fri
```

2 ●

```
              Set Time Zone



              Tokyo
              ±00:00
              15:05
```
Set Time Zone Window

3 ⊙ Select area ➡ ●

4 ☎ ➡ Standby returns

Advancing One Hour (Daylight Saving)
[Set Time Zone Window] ⌨
■ To cancel, press ⌨.

Adding Custom Time Zone
[Set Time Zone Window] ▤ ➡ Enter city name ➡ ● ➡ ⟨⟩ + or - ➡ ⊙ ➡ Enter time difference ➡ ●

Opening World Clock in Standby Manually

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ●

2 *Standby Display* ➡ ●

```
              Standby Display
Clock/Calendar
Off
Show Widget
On
```

3 *Clock/Calendar* ➡ ●

4 *World Clock (L)*, etc. ➡ ●

5 ☎ ➡ Standby returns

Using Hour Minder

Setting Hour Minder

Follow these steps to activate the hourly time signal at selected hours:

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ●

Hour Minder Menu

2. *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

3. *Select Time* ➡ ●

4. Select hour ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ⊠

5. ⊠ ➡ **Saved**

6. ⊡ ➡ **Standby returns**

Adjusting Hour Minder Volume
  In ❷, *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Volume:* ➡
  ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡
  From ❺

Changing Hour Minder Duration
  In ❷, *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Duration:*
  ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡
  From ❺
  ■ For custom Duration, select *Other*.

Selecting/Canceling All Hours
  In ❹, ▤ ➡ *Check All* or *Uncheck All*
  ➡ ●

At Hour Minder Time

Hour Minder activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

Stopping Tone Instantly
● Press a key.
When Another Function is Active
● Hour Minder does not activate.
Incoming Calls
● Active Hour Minder stops for incoming calls.
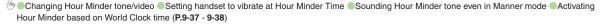
Canceling Hour Minder

1. **In Hour Minder menu,** *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠

Advanced

⚙️ ●Changing Hour Minder tone/video ●Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time ●Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode ●Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time (**P.9-37** - **9-38**)

9

Handy Extras

1

9-23

Saving Text

New Notepad Entry

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ●

```
Tll          15:05
    Notepad      Accessed
⇨<Add New Entry>
```

Notepad List

2 *<Add New Entry>* ➡ ●

3 Enter text ➡ ●

4 Select Category ➡ ● ➡ **Saved**

Sorting Entries Temporarily
[Notepad List] ◌
■ Press to toggle sort options (Modified, Created, Category and Accessed).

Inserting Notepad Text during Text Entry
[Text Entry Window] ◌ ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ *Call Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ●
■ Not available in Notepad text entry window.

Opening Notepad

1 **In Notepad list, select entry** ➡ ●
● Text appears.

2 ◌ ➡ **List returns**

Deleting Entries

■ **One Entry**

1 **In Notepad list, select entry** ➡ ◌

2 *Delete Item* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ **Selected Entries**

1 **In Notepad list, select entry** ➡ ◌ ➡ *Setting/Manage* ➡ ●

2 *Multiple Selection* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● (□/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ◌

3 *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Unchecking All
In 3, *Uncheck All* ➡ ●

■ **All Entries**

1 **In Notepad list, select entry** ➡ ◌ ➡ *Setting/Manage* ➡ ●

2 *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Advanced

⁂ ●Editing Notepad ●Searching text within all entries ●Inserting Notepad text into message text ●Sending entries via S! Mail ●Creating text files ●Importing text files ●Checking memory status ●Opening properties (**P.9-38**)

Using ASCII Art

Inserting ASCII Art

1 In message text entry window, ⊠ ➡ *Call ASCII Art* ➡ ●

2 Select entry ➡ ●

Previewing ASCII Art
In **2**, select entry ➡ ⊠
■ Press ● to insert ASCII Art.

Editing Entries

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *ASCII Art* ➡ ●

ASCII Art List

2 Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●

Opening Entries
In **2**, select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *View* ➡ ●
Adding New Entries
In **2**, *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ **Create ASCII Art** ➡ ●

Deleting Entries

1 In ASCII Art list, select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ●

2 *Yes* ➡ ●

9

Handy Extras

Recording/Playing Voice

Recording

- Recording stops if battery runs low while recording.
- Record conversations during calls via **Record Caller Voice**.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Voice Recorder* ➡ ●

Recording Window

2 ● ➡ **Recording starts**

3 ● ➡ **Recording ends**

- For **Extended Voice**, recording is saved automatically.

4 *Save* ➡ ●

Play Before Saving
In **3**, *Playback* ➡ ● ➡ Playback starts ➡ ▦ ➡ Playback stops
Starting Over
In **3**, ▦ ➡ From **2**

Playback

1 In recording window, ▣ ➡ *Ring Songs·Tones* ➡ ●

2 Select file ➡ ●

Playing Files via Data Folder
● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring Songs·Tones* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●

Playback Operations

Volume Control	◌
Pause/Resume	●
Stop	▦

Advanced

🔧 ●Saving longer recordings ●Sending Voice files via S! Mail ●Switching storage media (**P.9-38**)

Scanning Barcodes

Scan UPC/JAN (1D barcodes) or QR
Codes (2D barcodes).

- Membership file or password may be
  required when scanning barcodes.
- Some barcodes may not be scanned.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◌•
  Doc./Rec. ➡ *Barcode/Scan*
  ➡ ●

   | 15:05 |
   | Barcode/Scan |
   | Barcode Reader |
   | Open Barcode |
   | Create QR Code |
   | Scan Card |
   | Scan Receipt |
   | Kanji Grabber |

2 *Barcode Reader* ➡ ●

3 **Frame barcode in center of**
  Display

   | 15:05 |
   | Normal Scanning |

   — Focus Adjustment Bar

   Scan Window

- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a
  guide (better focus in darker blue).

4 ● ➡ **Scan starts**

- If recognition takes time, slowly
  adjust the distance between handset
  and barcode.
- To cancel, press ⊠.
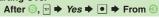
5 **Tone sounds ➡ Scan**
  results appear

   | 15:05 |
   | Scan Result |
   | XX Restaurant |
   | [Open Hours] |
   | Lunch: 11 am - 3 pm |
   | Dinner: 6 pm - 10 pm |
   | [Contact] |
   | aabb@xxx.xx |

Split Data

- After scanning, a confirmation appears.
  Follow onscreen prompt(s).
- Scan results do not appear until all split
  data is scanned.

Starting Over
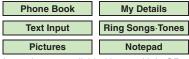
After ⑤, ⊠ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ From ③

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	3
Switch to Photo Camera	7
Focus Lock	🔍
Adjust Brightness	◌•
Open Help	0

Advanced

🅑 ●Scanning during text entry ●Scanning continuously ●Reading saved barcode images ●Saving scan results ●Saving to Notepad ●Saving linked info
to Phone Book ●Opening saved scan results ●Using linked info ●Using images as Wallpaper ●Saving images & melodies ●Copying text (And more
on **P.9-39** - **9-40**)

Creating QR Codes

Create QR Codes from these items on handset:

Phone Book	**My Details**
Text Input	**Ring Songs·Tones**
Pictures	**Notepad**

Large items are divided into multiple QR Codes.

Procedure

Follow these steps to create QR Codes from Data Folder files:

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◌
   Doc./Rec. ➡ *Barcode/Scan*
   ➡ ●

2. *Create QR Code* ➡ ●

3. *Data Folder* ➡ ●

4. Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select
   file or entry ➡ ●
   ● QR Code is created.

5. ●
   ● QR Code is saved to Data Folder
   (Pictures).

From Phone Book Entries
   In ❸, *Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ Select
   entry ➡ ● ➡ ❺
From My Details
   In ❸, *My Details* ➡ ● ➡ ⊞ ➡ ❺
From Entered Text
   In ❸, *Text Input* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text
   ➡ ● ➡ ❺
Switching Storage Media
   In ❺, ⊞ ➡ *Save to* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone* or
   Memory Card ➡ ● ➡ ●
Attaching to S! Mail
   In ❺, ⊞ ➡ *Send As Message* ➡ ●
   ➡ Complete message ➡ ⊠
Incoming Calls
● QR Code creation is not affected by
   incoming calls. End the call to return.

Scanning Business Cards

Scan business cards and save names, addresses, etc. to Phone Book.

- English business cards may not be scanned correctly.
- Some cards may not be scanned.

1. ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➜ *Barcode/Scan* ➜ ●

2. *Scan Card* ➜ ●

3. **Frame card on Display**

Scan Window

4. ●
   - To cancel, press ⊠.

5. ● ➜ Scan results appear

Scan Results Window

6. ● ➜ ⊠
   - New Phone Book entry is saved.

If Text Exceeds Phone Book Entry Item Character Limit
- A confirmation appears. Follow these steps to delete overage:
  Yes ➜ ●

Starting Over
  After ❺, ⊠ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ From ❸

Saving as vCard
  [Scan Results Window] ▤ ➜ *Save to* ➜ ● ➜ Select storage media ➜ ● ➜ ●
  ▪ Saved to Data Folder (Other Documents).

Saving Scanned Image as Phone Book Picture
  [Scan Results Window] ▤ ➜ *Add Image* ➜ ● ➜ *On* ➜ ● ➜ ❻

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	3
Switch to Photo Camera	7
Focus Lock	⌕
Adjust Brightness	⊙
Open Help	0

9

Handy Extras

Advanced

👆 ●Saving to Notepad ●Pasting to message text ●Copying text (**P.9-41**)

Scanning Text

Scan text and save it to Notepad, etc.
Available Modes:

Full	Capture text in full screen and scan a selected line
Line	Capture a few lines of text and scan a selected line
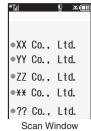
● To toggle mode, press ⊠ in scan window.
● Some text may not be scanned.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◌
   Doc./Rec. ➡ *Barcode/Scan*
   ➡ ●

2 *Scan Text* ➡ ●
   ● To change mode, press ⊠ in scan
   window.

3 **Frame text in center of Display**

```
┌─────────────────────┐
│ ▪Tₗₗ      ⊠ ⊠◌◫      │
│                     │
│                     │
│ ●XX Co., Ltd.       │
│ ●YY Co., Ltd.       │
│ ●ZZ Co., Ltd.       │
│ ●✻✻ Co., Ltd.       │
│ ●?? Co., Ltd.       │
└─────────────────────┘
      Scan Window
```

4 ●
   ● To cancel, press ⊠.
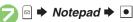
5 **Select line ➡ ● ➡ Scan
   results appear**

6 ●

```
┌─────────────────────┐
│ ▪Tₗₗ         15:05▐■▌│
│    Scanned Text     │
│             12/256  │
│ XX Co., Ltd.        │
│                     │
└─────────────────────┘
```

7 ⊠ ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ●

Correcting Text Type
After ⊖, ⊠ ➡ *Change Mode* ➡ ● ➡
Select type ➡ ● ➡ ⊖
Editing Scanned Text
After ⊖, ⊠ ➡ *Select/Edit* ➡ ● ➡
Select character ➡ Select alternative
from list or edit directly ➡ ⊖
Starting Over
In ⊖, ⊠ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ From ❸

   Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	3ᴅᴇꜰ
Switch to Photo Camera	7ᴘǫʀꜱ
Focus Lock	▣
Adjust Brightness	◌
Open Help	0⁺

Advanced

🔊 ●Scanning and pasting during text entry ●Scanning more text ●Saving scan results ●Saving linked info to Phone Book ●Opening saved scan results ●Using linked info ●Pasting to message text ●Copying text (**P.9-41** - **9-42**)

Using Kanji Grabber

Scan a kanji compound and look it up in dictionaries.

Some kanji may not be scanned.

1. ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙
   Doc./Rec. ➜ *Barcode/Scan*
   ➜ ●

2. *Kanji Grabber* ➜ ●

3. **Frame kanji in Loupe**

   漢字を読 ——— Loupe
   熟語（漢字が連
   、辞書で意味

   Scan Window

4. ●
   ● Scan results (kanji) appear.

5. ●

6. **Select dictionary ➜ ● ➜**
   Search ➜ ●

7. **Select word, etc. ➜ ●**
   ● Definition/translation window opens.

Starting Over
　In ⑥, ✉ ➜ **From ③**

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	3
Switch to Photo Camera	7
Focus Lock	🔒
Zoom In/Out	🔍
Adjust Brightness	⊙
Open Help	0

Advanced

👆 ●Scanning and pasting during text entry (**P.9-42**)

Calendar

■ **View Settings**

Changing default view	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ 🖻 ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Default View* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●
Jumping to specified date	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ 8 ➡ Enter date ➡ ●
Changing date color	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	By Days of the Week 🖻 ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Color* ➡ ● ➡ *By Week* ➡ ● ➡ Select day ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ●
	By Date Select date ➡ 4 ➡ Select color ➡ ●
	Resetting "By Date" Colors 🖻 ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Color* ➡ ● ➡ *Reset Color* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Selecting task view option	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ 🖻 ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Tasks View* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Adding stamps (1Month View)	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ 2 ➡ Select stamp ➡ ●
Hiding schedules	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Secret:* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ 🗝

Saving/editing additional holidays	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ 🖻 ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Holiday* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ *Private* ➡ See below
	Adding Holidays *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ Enter date ➡ ● ➡ Select frequency ➡ ● ➡ 🗝
	Editing Added Holidays Select holiday ➡ 🖻 ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Name:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Date:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date ➡ ● ➡ Select frequency ➡ ● ➡ 🗝
Hiding/showing holidays	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ 🖻 ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Holiday* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ *Private* or *Public* ➡ Select holiday ➡ ● (☐ / ✓)

■ Saving/Editing Schedules

Setting Location	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ ● *Location:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter location ➡ ● ➡ ⌨
Creating Categories	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Category* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Renaming Categories Select Category ➡ ● ➡ *Edit Category Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
	Changing Icons Select Category ➡ ● ➡ *Change Icon* ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ●
	Resetting ⌨ ➡ *Reset Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Saving repetitive schedules	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Repeat:* ➡ ● ➡ Select frequency ➡ ● ➡ Enter repeat time ➡ ● ➡ ⌨ ● Repeat time is not available for *Every Year*.

Saving S! Friend's Status information	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend'sStatus:* ➡ ● ➡ *Link Setting:* ➡ ● ➡ *Linked* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Availability *Answer Status:* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ⌨ ➡ ⌨ ➡ ⌨ ● Set Category first.
	Comment *Comment:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ ⌨ ➡ ⌨ ● Set Category first.
Editing entries	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as saving schedules ➡ ⌨
Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Alarm:* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Alarm Tone/Video *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ● ➡ ⌨ ➡ ⌨ ● Select start point if required.
	Duration *Duration:* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ➡ ⌨ ➡ ⌨ ● For custom Duration, select *Other* and press ●.
Changing Alarm volume	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Alarm Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Alarm Volume:* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●

9

Handy Extras

Selecting Vibration option	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ▣ ➡ *Alarm Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Vibration:* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ▣ ➡ *Alarm Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *For Manner Mode:* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ **Managing Schedules**

Searching entries	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	By Part of Subject 6⬚ ➡ Enter text ➡ ●
	By Category 9⬚ ➡ Select Category ➡ ●
Checking memory status	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ ▣ ➡ *Memory Status* ➡ ●
Deleting all entries	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ▣ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *All Appointments* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View)	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Within One Week Select date ➡ ▣ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *All This Week* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Up to the End of Previous Week Select date ➡ ▣ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Up to Last Week* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Deleting entries by specifying month (1Month View)	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Within One Month Select date ➡ ▣ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *All This Month* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Up to the End of Previous Month Select date ➡ ▣ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Up to Last Month* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting entries in two months (2Month View)	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ▣ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *All This 2Months* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Tasks

■ **Task List**

Hiding tasks	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ Select task ➡ ▣ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Secret:* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ ⌄

■ **Saving/Editing Tasks**

Editing tasks	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ Select task ➡ ▣ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as saving tasks ➡ ⌄
Setting priority	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ Select task ➡ ▣ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Priority:* ➡ ● ➡ Select priority ➡ ● ➡ ⌄

Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	Start Here ● ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➔ ● ➔ Select task ➔ ▣ ➔ *Edit* ➔ ● ➔ *Alarm:* ➔ ● ➔ See below
	Alarm Tone/Video *Assign Tone/Video:* ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select tone/file ➔ ● ➔ �apple ➔ �apple ● Select start point if required.
	Duration *Duration:* ➔ ● ➔ Select time ➔ ● ➔ �apple ➔ �apple ● For custom Duration, select *Other* and press ●.
Changing Alarm volume	● ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➔ ● ➔ ▣ ➔ *Alarm Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Alarm Volume:* ➔ ● ➔ Adjust level ➔ ●
Selecting Vibration option	● ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➔ ● ➔ ▣ ➔ *Alarm Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Vibration:* ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	● ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➔ ● ➔ ▣ ➔ *Alarm Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *For Manner Mode:* ➔ ● ➔ *Ring* ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●

■ Managing Tasks

Searching tasks	Start Here ● ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➔ ● ➔ ▣ ➔ *Find* ➔ ● ➔ See below
	By Part of Subject *By Subject* ➔ ● ➔ Enter text ➔ ●
	By Due Date *By Due Date* ➔ ● ➔ Enter date ➔ ●
Sorting tasks by priority	● ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➔ ● ➔ ▣ ➔ *Sort* ➔ ● ➔ *Priority* ➔ ●
Checking memory status	● ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➔ ● ➔ ▣ ➔ *Memory Status* ➔ ●
Deleting all tasks	● ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➔ ● ➔ ▣ ➔ *Delete* ➔ ● ➔ *All Tasks* ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●

Alarms

Editing entries	● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ In PIM/Life menu, *Alarms* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select entry ⇒ ● ⇒ Select item ⇒ ● ⇒ **Edit in the same manner as saving entries** ⇒ ✉
Saving entry name	● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ In PIM/Life menu, *Alarms* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select entry ⇒ ● ⇒ *Subject:* ⇒ ● ⇒ **Enter name** ⇒ ● ⇒ ✉
Changing Alarm tone/video	<u>Start Here</u> ● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ In PIM/Life menu, *Alarms* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select entry ⇒ ● ⇒ *Assign Tone/Video:* ⇒ ● ⇒ **See below**
	Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder ⇒ ● ⇒ Select tone/file ⇒ ● ⇒ ✉ ● Select start point if required.
	Using Customized Screen Tone/Video *Customized Screen* ⇒ ● ⇒ ✉
Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time	● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ In PIM/Life menu, *Alarms* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select entry ⇒ ● ⇒ *Vibration:* ⇒ ● ⇒ *On* ⇒ ● ⇒ ✉
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ In PIM/Life menu, *Alarms* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *For Manner Mode* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Ring* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Yes* ⇒ ●
Activating Alarm based on World Clock time	● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ In PIM/Life menu, *Alarms* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Settings* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Link to World Clk* ⇒ ● ⇒ *On* ⇒ ●

Wakeup TV

Editing entries	● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ In PIM/Life menu, *Wakeup TV* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select entry ⇒ ● ⇒ Select item ⇒ ● ⇒ **Edit in the same manner as saving entries** ⇒ ✉
Changing Alarm tone/video	<u>Start Here</u> ● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ In PIM/Life menu, *Wakeup TV* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select entry ⇒ ● ⇒ *Assign Tone/Video:* ⇒ ● ⇒ **See below**
	Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder ⇒ ● ⇒ Select tone/file ⇒ ● ⇒ ✉ ● Select start point if required.
	Using Customized Screen Tone/Video *Customized Screen* ⇒ ● ⇒ ✉
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ In PIM/Life menu, *Wakeup TV* ⇒ ● ⇒ *For Manner Mode* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Ring* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Yes* ⇒ ●

Household Accounts

Renaming icon labels	<u>Start Here</u> ● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ In PIM/Life menu, *Household Accounts* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select manual input panel ⇒ ● ⇒ **See below**
	Shops *Shop* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select icon ⇒ ▣ ⇒ Enter name ⇒ ●
	Payment Methods *Paid* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select icon ⇒ ▣ ⇒ Enter name ⇒ ●
	Categories *Change* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select icon ⇒ ▣ ⇒ Enter name ⇒ ●

Exporting Household Accounts data	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Household Accounts* ➡ ● ➡ 🗐 ➡ *Export All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Data is exported as a CSV file and saved to handset Data Folder (Other Documents). ● Files are saved to Memory Card, if inserted.

Calculator

Copying calculation results	While result appears, 🗐 ➡ *Copy* ➡ ●
Changing exchange rate for currency conversion	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calculator* ➡ ● ➡ 🗐 ➡ *Money Converter* ➡ ● ➡ *Exchange Rate* ➡ ● ➡ *Domestic* or *Foreign* ➡ ● ➡ Enter rate ➡ ●
Converting currencies	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calculator* ➡ ● ➡ Enter amount of money ➡ 🗐 ➡ *Money Converter* ➡ ● ➡ *To Domestic* or *To Foreign* ➡ ● ● Set Exchange Rate first.

Expenses Memo

Changing Category of saved entry	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Expenses Memo* ➡ ● ➡ Select list ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ●
Changing amount	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Expenses Memo* ➡ ● ➡ Select list ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ 🗐 ➡ *Change Amount* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●

Renaming Categories	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Expenses Memo* ➡ ● ➡ *Edit Category* ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Simulated Call

Starting via Simulated Call menu	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Simulated Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Receive Simulated Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Simulated Call starts immediately regardless of Receive Timing setting. ● Settings remain even after starting Simulated Call during setup.
Clearing caller information	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Simulated Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Caller* ➡ ● ➡ 🗐 ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ 🗺 ➡ 🗺
Overriding Silent volume setting	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Simulated Call* ➡ ● ➡ *For Silent Mode* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ 🗺

Hour Minder

Changing Hour Minder tone/video	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🔄 *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ● ➡ 🗺 ➡ 🗺 ● Select start point if required.
Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🔄 *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Vibration:* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ 🗺 ➡ 🗺

9

Handy Extras

Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *For Manner Mode:* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ ⊠
Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to World Clk:* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ ⊠

Notepad

Editing Notepad	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊟ ➡ See below
	Editing Text *Edit Text* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
	Changing Category *Change Category* ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ●
Searching text within all entries	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊟ ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●
Inserting Notepad text into message text	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊟ ➡ *Send* ➡ ● ➡ *As Message Text* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⊠ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Sending entries via S! Mail	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊟ ➡ *Send* ➡ ● ➡ *Via Message* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⊠
Creating text files	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊟ ➡ *Setting/Manage* ➡ ● ➡ *Create Text File* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
Importing text files	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊟ ➡ *Setting/Manage* ➡ ● ➡ *Import Text File* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●
Checking memory status	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊟ ➡ *Setting/Manage* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Status* ➡ ●
Opening properties	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊟ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

Voice Recorder

Saving longer recordings	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Voice Recorder* ➡ ● ➡ ⊟ ➡ *Record Time* ➡ ● ➡ *Extended Voice* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ Recording starts ➡ ● ➡ Recording ends ● Insert Memory Card to record in *Extended Voice* mode. (Recording is saved automatically.)
Sending Voice files via S! Mail	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Voice Recorder* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ Recording starts ➡ ● ➡ Recording ends ➡ *Save and Send* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⊠ ● Available in *For Message* mode.
Switching storage media	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Voice Recorder* ➡ ● ➡ ⊟ ➡ *Save Recording to* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● Available in *For Message* mode. ● Set to *Ask Each Time* to select media after every recording.

9

Handy Extras

Barcode Reader

Scanning during text entry	Start Here In a text entry window, ⊠ ➡ *Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Code* ➡ ● ➡ Frame barcode in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Pasting All Scan Results ●
	Pasting a Part of Scan Results ⊠ ➡ Select first character ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ●
Scanning continuously	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Barcode Reader* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Continuous Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Frame barcode in center of Display ➡ ● • Choose *Yes* to continue scanning or *No* and press ● to view scan results.
Reading saved barcode images	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Open Barcode* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●
Saving scan results	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Barcode Reader* ➡ ● ➡ Frame barcode in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save* ➡ ●
Saving to Notepad	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Barcode Reader* ➡ ● ➡ Frame barcode in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ●

Saving linked info to Phone Book	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Barcode Reader* ➡ ● ➡ Frame barcode in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ Select number or mail address ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save to Ph.Book* ➡ ● ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ ⌴ • To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*. • When *MEMORY:* appears in scan results, press ● to enter the items underlined with a dotted line (*NAME1:*, *TEL1:*, etc.) automatically in Phone Book entry window.
Opening saved scan results	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scanned Results* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● • Select a file and press ⊠ to rename files, open properties or delete files. • Some files may not open.
Using linked info	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Barcode Reader* ➡ ● ➡ Frame barcode in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Dialing Numbers Select phone number ➡ ● ➡ 🖉
	Sending Messages Select mail address ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⌴ • When *MAILTO:* appears in scan results along with *SUBJECT:* or *BODY:*, press ● to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Mail Composition window.
	Accessing Websites Select URL ➡ ●

9

Handy Extras

Using images as Wallpaper	● X *Tools* X ● X ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* X *Barcode/Scan* X ● X *Barcode Reader* X ● X **Frame barcode in center of Display** X ● X **Select image** X 回 X *Set as Wallpaper* X ● X ● ● For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.
Saving images & melodies	● X *Tools* X ● X ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* X *Barcode/Scan* X ● X *Barcode Reader* X ● X **Frame barcode in center of Display** X ● X **Select file** X 回 X *To Data Folder* X ●
Opening or playing files	● X *Tools* X ● X ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* X *Barcode/Scan* X ● X *Barcode Reader* X ● X **Frame barcode in center of Display** X ● X **Select file** X ●
Using images for System Graphics	● X *Tools* X ● X ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* X *Barcode/Scan* X ● X *Barcode Reader* X ● X **Frame barcode in center of Display** X ● X **Select image** X 回 X *As System* X ● X **Select item** X ● X **Specify image area** X ● ● Some images may be usable without specifying image area.

Pasting to message text	**Start Here** ● X *Tools* X ● X ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* X *Barcode/Scan* X ● X *Barcode Reader* X ● X **Frame barcode in center of Display** X ● X 回 X *Send Message* X ● X **See below** **All Text** ● X *S! Mail* or *SMS* X ● X **Complete message** X Y ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. **Selected Text** 回 X **Select first character** X ● X **Highlight text range** X ● X *S! Mail* or *SMS* X ● X **Complete message** X Y ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Copying text	**Start Here** ● X *Tools* X ● X ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* X *Barcode/Scan* X ● X *Barcode Reader* X ● X **Frame barcode in center of Display** X ● X **See below** **Text** 回 X *Copy* X ● X **Select first character** X ● X **Highlight text range** X ● **Number, Address or URL** **Select number, mail address or URL** X 回 X *Copy Telephone*, *Copy Address* or *Copy URL* X ●

9

Handy Extras

1

9-40

Scan Card

Saving to Notepad	● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ⇒ *Barcode/Scan* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Scan Card* ⇒ ● ⇒ Frame card in center of Display ⇒ ● ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ ⇒ *Notepad* ⇒ ●
Pasting to message text	Start Here ● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ⇒ *Barcode/Scan* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Scan Card* ⇒ ● ⇒ Frame card in center of Display ⇒ ● ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ ⇒ *Send Message* ⇒ ● ⇒ See below **All Text** ● ⇒ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ⇒ ● ⇒ Complete message ⇒ ⊻ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. **Selected Text** ⊡ ⇒ Select first character ⇒ ● ⇒ Highlight text range ⇒ ● ⇒ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ⇒ ● ⇒ Complete message ⇒ ⊻ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Copying text	● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ⇒ *Barcode/Scan* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Scan Card* ⇒ ● ⇒ Frame card in center of Display ⇒ ● ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ ⇒ *Copy* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select first character ⇒ ● ⇒ Highlight text range ⇒ ●

Scan Text

Scanning and pasting during text entry	In a text entry window, ⊡ ⇒ *Scan* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Scan Text* ⇒ ● ⇒ Frame text in center of Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Select line ⇒ ● ⇒ ●
Scanning more text	● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ⇒ *Barcode/Scan* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Scan Text* ⇒ ● ⇒ Frame text in center of Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Select line ⇒ ● ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ ⇒ *Continue Part* or *Scan More* ⇒ ● ● Select *Continue Part* to enter additional text or *Scan More* to enter text after a line break.
Saving scan results	● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ⇒ *Barcode/Scan* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Scan Text* ⇒ ● ⇒ Frame text in center of Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Select line ⇒ ● ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ ⇒ *Save* ⇒ ●
Saving linked info to Phone Book	● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ⇒ *Barcode/Scan* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Scan Text* ⇒ ● ⇒ Frame text in center of Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Select line ⇒ ● ⇒ ● ⇒ Select number or mail address ⇒ ⊡ ⇒ *Save to Ph.Book* ⇒ ● ⇒ *As New Entry* ⇒ ● ⇒ Complete other fields ⇒ ⊻ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.
Opening saved scan results	● ⇒ *Tools* ⇒ ● ⇒ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ⇒ *Barcode/Scan* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Scanned Results* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select file ⇒ ● ● Select a file and press ⊡ to rename files, open properties or delete files. ● Some files may not open.

Using linked info	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ ● ➡ **Select line** ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Dialing Numbers **Select phone number** ➡ ● ➡ 🖃
	Sending Messages **Select mail address** ➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡ ⊻
	Accessing Websites **Select URL** ➡ ●
Pasting to message text	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ ● ➡ **Select line** ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ⊟ ➡ *Send Message* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	All Text ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡ ⊻ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
	Selected Text ⊟ ➡ **Select first character** ➡ ● ➡ **Highlight text range** ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡ ⊻ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Copying text	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ ● ➡ **Select line** ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Text ⊟ ➡ *Copy* ➡ ● ➡ **Select first character** ➡ ● ➡ **Highlight text range** ➡ ●
	Number, Address or URL **Select number, mail address or URL** ➡ ⊟ ➡ *Copy Telephone*, *Copy Address* or *Copy URL* ➡ ●

Kanji Grabber

Scanning and pasting during text entry	In a text entry window, ⊟ ➡ *Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Kanji Grabber* ➡ ● ➡ **Frame kanji in Loupe** ➡ ● ➡ **Scan results appear** ➡ ●

Wakeup TV

TV does not activate with specified channel

- If Wakeup TV Time arrives while TV is active, channel does not switch to the specified one.

Auto World Clock

World Clock does not appear automatically

- *Daylight Saving* in Date & Time may be set to *On*.
- *Set Time Zone* in Date & Time may be set to a city other than *Tokyo*.
- Local time does not appear if time information cannot be obtained via the Network.

Local time does not appear

- Local time disappears when:
  - Auto World Clock setting is changed to *Disabled*
  - World Clock setting is changed
  - Clock/Calendar setting in Date & Time is changed from *World Clock (L)*

Voice Recorder

Cannot record properly

- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

Noise/skipping occurs

- Avoid shocks to handset while recording; may cause noise or skipping.

Recording takes time to start

- Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

Scanning Barcode/Card/Text

Cannot read barcodes properly

- Scan may fail if barcode is dirty or unclear.
- Scan may fail if barcode is scanned under inadequate light.
- Scan may fail if multiple barcodes are captured at one time.

Cannot read split QR Codes in Data Folder automatically

- When scan fails, follow onscreen instructions and select next barcode image manually.

Cannot scan business cards properly

- Scan fails if business card is printed in light-colored text on a dark background, handwritten or printed in casual/decorative fonts, decorated with a background pattern, or designed with both vertical and horizontal text.
- Scan may fail if business card is printed in light-colored text on a light background, printed in italics or extremely small fonts, decorated with a logo or logo-like text, printed on a glossy paper or other material, or dirty/folded.

Cannot scan text properly

- Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- In Line mode, adjust to frame text in [ ]. Letters at the ends may be distorted.

10

Widgets & Entertainment

Customizing Standby Display (Japanese)

Paste various widgets (applications) to Standby to access/activate information/functions immediately from Standby.

【S!速報ニュースとは?】
【S!速報ニュースとは?】 — S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget

15:05

10.01.FRI

twinavi   twitter — Widgets

Alarm

OPEN   PANTONE® 3

Obtaining Widgets

1. ● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ●

   Mobile Widget
   Widget Store
   Widget Contents
   Settings

   Mobile Widget Menu

2. *Widget Store* ➡ ●
   ● Follow onscreen instructions.

Installing Widgets
● Some widgets may need to be installed manually; follow these steps:
   [Mobile Widget Menu] *Widget Contents* ➡ ● ➡ Select widget ➡ 🗐 ➡ *Install* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Activating Widgets Not Saved in Standby
   [Mobile Widget Menu] *Widget Contents* ➡ ● ➡ Select widget ➡ ● ➡ ●
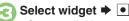
Saving Widgets to Standby

1. 🔆

2. 🔀 Select 🔺 (OPEN) ➡ ●

   シート1
   Widget Tab
   Standby Shortcut Tab
   05
   .FRI
   Cat

3. Select widget ➡ ●
   ● Corresponding icon appears.

4. 🔀 Specify target location ➡ ●

Using Pointer
● After ❶, Long Press 🔽 to activate pointer navigation; select widgets, etc.
● To cancel pointer navigation, Long Press 🔽.

Advanced

Widgets & Entertainment

10

Using Widgets

1 ⑤ ➜ 🔅 **Select widget ➜ ●**

2 ●
  ● Widget activates; follow onscreen instructions.

Using Sheets

Paste widgets and Standby Shortcuts on each sheet; toggle sheets to use them.

Saving Widgets on Other Sheets

1 **In Mobile Widget menu,**
  Widget Contents ➜ ●

2 **Select widget ➜ ⊠**

3 ***Paste to Standby Display***
  ➜ ●

4 **Select sheet ➜ ●**

5 **Specify target location ➜ ●**

Toggling Sheets

1 ⑤ ➜ ▾

  ● To toggle further, press ▾ or ⚹.
  ● Sheet name appears at the top, then disappears.
  ● Save widgets as needed; corresponding icons appear on the current sheet.
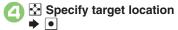
Using Locked Sheets
  ⑤ ➜ **Select 🔒 ➜ ● ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ●**

Widgets & Entertainment

10

Advanced

🕭 ●[Logging in to Yahoo! JAPAN](#) ●[Moving widgets](#) ●[Slowing pointer speed](#) ●[Editing sheet names](#) ●[Locking sheets](#) (And more on **P.10-16** - **10-17**)

Removing Widgets from Standby

① <kbd>⚬</kbd> ➜ ✛ Select widget ➜ <kbd>✉</kbd>

② *Operation* ➜ <kbd>●</kbd>

```
          Operation
Change Layout
Remove
To Front
To Back
Update View
```

③ *Remove* ➜ <kbd>●</kbd>

④ *Yes* ➜ <kbd>●</kbd>

Deleting Widgets

① **In Mobile Widget menu, *Widget Contents* ➜ <kbd>●</kbd>**

② **Select widget ➜ <kbd>✉</kbd>**
 ● *S!速報ニュース/S!ともだち状況* cannot be deleted.

③ *Delete* ➜ <kbd>●</kbd> ➜ *Yes* ➜ <kbd>●</kbd>

Deleting All Widgets
 In ②, *S!速報ニュース/S!ともだち状況* ➜ <kbd>✉</kbd> ➜ *Delete All* ➜ <kbd>●</kbd> ➜ *Yes* ➜ <kbd>●</kbd>
 ■ If there is a widget saved in Standby, a confirmation appears; follow onscreen prompt.

Using S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget

001SH is preloaded with *S!速報ニュース/S!ともだち状況* (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget) that shows S! Quick News and S! Friend's Status information in Standby.

```
【S!速報ニュース とは?】
【S!速報ニュース とは?】
```
S! Quick News &
S! Friend's Status Widget

View Settings

■ **Setting View Pattern**

① <kbd>⚬</kbd> ➜ ✛ **Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➜ <kbd>✉</kbd>**

② *Settings* ➜ <kbd>●</kbd> ➜ *Pattern Setting* ➜ <kbd>●</kbd>

③ **Select item ➜ <kbd>●</kbd> (☐/☑) ➜ <kbd>Y'</kbd>**

■ **Switching View**

① <kbd>⚬</kbd> ➜ ✛ **Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➜ <kbd>✉</kbd>**

② *Operation* ➜ <kbd>●</kbd> ➜ *Switch Pattern* ➜ <kbd>●</kbd>

 ● Repeat the steps above to switch the view.

Advanced

🅑 ●Removing multiple widgets at once ●Adding news items ●Changing news scroll speed ●Showing unread news only ●Assigning members ●Managing members (**P.10-17**)

Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)

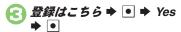View content updates or breaking news. Packet transmission fees apply.

Registering S! Quick News Items

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ●

2. *S! Quick News List* ➡ ●

   S! Quick News List

3. *登録はこちら* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
   ● Handset connects to the Internet.
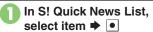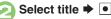
4. Select item ➡ ●
   ● Follow onscreen instructions.

Opening Information

1. In S! Quick News List, select item ➡ ●
   ● Title list appears.

2. Select title ➡ ●
   ● Information appears.
   ● Press 🔙 to return to title list, or 🔜 to open next title.

Updating Items Manually
[S! Quick News List] Select item ➡ 🔜 ➡ *更新* ➡ ● ➡ *一件* or *全件* ➡ ●

Indicators

📰	Unread Special news	📄	Unread General news
📰	Read Special news	📄	Read General news
📰	Unread News Flash	✖	Auto update disabled
📰	Read News Flash		

Widgets & Entertainment

10

Advanced

✎ ●Setting S! Quick News automatic update ●Checking update schedule ●Deleting S! Quick News items ●Resetting S! Quick News List ●Changing background image ●Accessing source sites ●Disabling image download (**P.10-18**)

10-5

S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically; use Weather Indicator as needed. Packet transmission fees apply.

Service Registration & Content Subscription

1. ● ➔ *Entertainment* ➔ ●
   ➔ *S! Information Channel/ Weather* ➔ ●

   ```
   "Tll              15:05
   S!Info. Channel
   What's New

   Back Issue

   Registration/Canc…

   Get Latest Conten…
   ```
   S! Information Channel Menu

2. *Registration/Cancel* ➔ ●
   - Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

New Received Information

Information window opens for new S! Information Channel info delivery.

1. While Information window appears, *S! Info. Channel* ➔ ●
   - S! Information Channel page opens. Follow onscreen instructions.
   - S! Information Channel page handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.

2. ☎ ➔ Standby returns

Opening Unread Latest Issue
[S! Information Channel Menu]
What's New ➔ ●
Opening Back Issues
[S! Information Channel Menu] *Back Issue* ➔ ● ➔ Select date ➔ ●

Using Weather Indicator

After S! Information Channel registration, local area weather indicator appears in Standby.

Manual Update
[S! Information Channel Menu]
Weather Indicator ➔ ● ➔ *Manual Update* ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●

Advanced

🅑 ●Suppressing Information window for new received info ●Changing Display Size ●Changing scroll unit ●Copying text ●Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby ●Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates ●Suppressing Information window for weather updates (And more on **P.10-18** - **10-19**)

Downloading Content (Japanese)

Download media content via Yahoo! Keitai.

Via Free Content Providers

Download free Graphic Mail templates, e-Books, games, etc.
Content downloads are free, however, they require Internet connection incurring packet transmission fees.

1 ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●

Entertainment Menu

2 *Free Contents* ➡ ●

3 Select provider ➡ ●
- Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

Via S! Contents Store

1 In Entertainment menu, *S! Contents Store* ➡ ●
- Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

Reading e-Books (Japanese)

Downloading e-Books

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●

   15:05
   Entertainment
   S! Information …
   S! Quick News
   Free Contents
   S! Contents Sto…
   S! Friend's Sta…

   Entertainment Menu

2. *S! Contents Store* ➡ ●
   - Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.
   - Downloaded e-Books are saved to Data Folder (Books).

Note
- Alternatively, go to SH-web Mobile Internet site (シャープメーカーサイトSH-web in Bookmarks; see **P.5-8**) for e-Books.

Downloading Free e-Books
  In ❷, *Free Contents* ➡ ● ➡
  Tada-Hon or *Tada-Komi* ➡ ●
  ■ Follow onscreen instructions.

e-Book Viewer
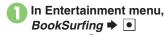
Read XMDF books and dictionary files. Some files may not be supported.

1. **In Entertainment menu,**
   e-Book Viewer ➡ ●
   - e-Book Viewer starts. Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

BookSurfing®

Download Contents Keys and read CCF files. Some files may not be supported.

1. **In Entertainment menu,**
   BookSurfing ➡ ●
   - BookSurfing® S! Application starts. Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.

Moving CCF Files via Memory Card
- When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files and retrieve Contents Keys to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

Widgets & Entertainment

10

Advanced

🖐 ●Copying text ●Opening non-001SH e-Books (Library) ●Using Library (**P.10-19**)

Using S! Friend's Status

Exchange current usage status, mood, etc. with compatible handsets.

- Save and organize members in Groups.
- S! Friend's Status requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Set IP Service Setting to *On*.
- Set Connection status to *Online*.

First S! Friend's Status Use

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book; Status, Availability and Comment are sent to the members.

```
"Til 🖅 📱                    15:05
   ● Yamada Takako
   👤 私の状況
 🔺 Online
 ☺ ごきげん
 🔒 Answer Status
   📧 Answer OK
   📧 Reply OK
   📧 Join OK
 💬 <Add Comment>
```

1 ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●
➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ●

2 *Yes* ➡ ●

```
A member is not
   registered.
Register a member?
      Yes
      No
```

3 *Yes* ➡ ●

4 *Phone Book* ➡ ●

5 Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select phone number ➡ ●
- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.

6 *Yes* ➡ ●
- Registration request is sent to the number.

When Request is Accepted
- An acceptance notice arrives; My Status is sent and member's status appears on handset.

Direct Entry
In **4**, *Add New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Enter phone number ➡ ● ➡ **6**

If IP Service Setting is *Off*
After **1**, *On* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ From **2**

Widgets & Entertainment

10

Advanced

🖉 ●Adding members ●Deleting members ●Moving members ●Renaming Groups ●Updating manually ●Opening notices ●Sending My Details image
(And more on **P.10-20** - **10-21**)

Opening Member Status

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●
   ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ●
   ➡ ⊙ **Select Group**

		15:05
Group 1		
私の状況		— My Status
Kondo Koichi		— Member Status
Ueda Mikio		

2. **Select member ➡ ●**
   ● Member status details appear.

When Cancellation Notice Arrives
● Member is deleted from S! Friend's Status member list.
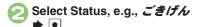
Changing My Status

Follow these steps to change Status, Availability and Comment; new status is sent to the members.

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●
   ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ●
   ➡ *私の状況* ➡ ●

		15:05
Yamada Takako 私の状況		
⚓ Online		— Connection Status
☺ ごきげん		
♨ Answer Status		
Answer OK		
Reply OK		
Join OK		

   My Status Window

2. **Select Status, e.g., ごきげん**
   ➡ ●

		15:05
状況テンプレート		
1	2	3	4
☺ ごきげん		
☺ ハッピー		
♨ ひまー		
♨ あそぼー		

   Status Template Window

3. **Select new Status ➡ ●**

4. **Select Availability, e.g., *Answer OK* ➡ ● ➡ Select new Availability ➡ ●**

5. **<Add Comment> ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●**

6. ⊠ **➡ Update starts**

Changing Connection Status
[My Status Window] *Online* (or *Offline*) ➡ ● ➡ Select status ➡ ●
Changing Status Icon/Label
[Status Template Window] Select Status ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Status Icon* or *Status Label* ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram or enter text ➡ ● ➡ ⊠
Changing Availability Settings at Once
In 4, *Answer Status* ➡ ● ➡ Select new Answer Status ➡ ● ➡ From 5
Editing My Status Name
[My Status Window] 🗐 ➡ *Edit Name* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
Avoiding Member Image Reception
[My Status Window] 🗐 ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Receiving Image* ➡ ● ➡ *Reject* ➡ ●

🔰

Advanced

🔧 ●Saving custom Availability combinations ●Changing Status Icon Pictogram or Status Label description (**P.10-20**)

Receiving Request from Unsaved Numbers

When a registration request arrives, a confirmation appears.

> Accept the registration request from Ito Jun?
> Yes
> No
> ConfirmLater

1 *Yes* ➡ ●

● Acceptance notice is sent; the number is registered.

Rejecting
In **1**, *No* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
■ Rejection notice is sent; the number cannot be registered for 24 hours.
■ For *ConfirmLater*, Information window opens.

Creating Status Templates

Save custom combinations of Status Icon and Status Label to each template.

> 状況テンプレート
> 1 2 3 4
> ☺ごきげん
> ☺ハッピー
> ♍ひまー
> ♨あそぼー

1 In Status Template window, ⊠ ➡ *New Entry* ➡ ●

2 Enter name ➡ ●

3 *‹未定›* ➡ ●

4 *Status Icon* ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ●

5 *Status Label* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ ⟨ʏ⟩

6 Repeat **3** - **5** ➡ ⟨ʏ⟩ ➡ Saved

Saving to Data Folder
[Status Template Window] ⊡ Select template ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save to DF* ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
Loading Templates via Data Folder
[Status Template Window] ⊠ ➡ *Add Template* ➡ ● ➡ Select template ➡ ●
Renaming Templates
[Status Template Window] ⊡ Select template ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Edit Temp. Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Advanced

⚙ ●Rejecting requests ●Resetting templates (**P.10-20**)

Using S! Circle Talk

Use handset like a walkie-talkie to speak to multiple parties simultaneously.

- A subscription to S! Friend's Status is required.
- Packet transmission fees apply during S! Circle Talk.
- Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

Registering Members

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book:

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●
   ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ●
   - When registering a member for the first time, member registration confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and press ●, then skip ahead to ❸.

2. *<Add New Entry>* ➡ ●

   New Entry
   Individual
   Group

3. *Group* ➡ ● ➡ *Group Name:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

   NewGroup 0 People
   Group Name:
   Friend
   No.1:
   No.2:

4. Select number, e.g., *No.1:* ➡ ●

5. *Phone Book* ➡ ●

6. Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select phone number ➡ ●

   NewGroup 1 People
   Group Name:
   Friend
   No.1:
   Ueda Mikio
   No.2:

   - Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.
   - Repeat ❹ - ❻ to add members.

7. ⊠ ➡ Saved

Saving as Individuals
   In ❸, *Individual* ➡ ● ➡ ❹ - ❻
Saving from S! Friend's Status Member List
   In ❺, *Members List* ➡ ● ➡ Select member ➡ ● ➡ ❼
   ■ Omit ❼ when *Individual* is selected in ❸.
If IP Service Setting is *Off*
   After ❶, *On* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ● ➡ From ❷

Advanced

🔧 ●Editing individual members ●Editing Groups (**P.10-21**)

Initiating S! Circle Talk

Follow these steps to send S! Circle Talk requests to members:
(Set Connection status to *Online* (**P.10-10**) first.)

1 ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ●

2 Select member or Group ➡ ●

3 ● ➡ Transmission starts
 ● S! Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.
 ● Loudspeaker activates automatically.

Direct Entry
Enter phone number ➡ ● ➡ *Call S! Circle Talk* ➡ ● ➡ ●

S! Circle Talk Operations

■ **Speaking**

1 Press and hold 🔽 when *Press and Hold 🔽* appears ➡ You have the floor

 ● 🔽*:My Turn* appears when you have the floor.

2 Keep holding 🔽 to speak ➡ Release 🔽 ➡ Floor is released
 ● Warning tone sounds before time limit.
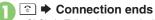
Incoming Calls during S! Circle Talk
 ● Incoming calls are rejected. Set handset to exit S! Circle Talk to answer incoming calls as needed.
Canceling Loudspeaker
 During S! Circle Talk, ●
 ■ To reactivate, follow these steps:
  ● ➡ **While message appears,** ●

■ **Exiting S! Circle Talk**

1 🔲 ➡ Connection ends
 ● S! Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.

Rejoining S! Circle Talk
 🔄/🔄 ➡ **Select most recent S! Circle Talk record** ➡ 🔲 ➡ *Rejoin Circle Talk* ➡ ●
 ■ Not available when S! Circle Talk has ended or maximum number of participants are already engaged.

Accepting S! Circle Talk Request

1 While handset is ringing/ vibrating, ● ➡ S! Circle Talk starts
 ● Alternatively, press 🔽.
 ● S! Circle Talk Operations: left

Widgets & Entertainment

10

Advanced

🖐 ●Disabling Loudspeaker ●Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls (**P.10-21**)

10-13

Blogging

Save blog details to view or update blogs easily on handset.

Saving Blog Details

Setup for Posting via Mail

Follow these steps to save blog name and address for posting:

1. **●** ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ **●**
   ➡ *Blog Tool* ➡ **●**

   Blog Tool
   ①Add New Entry
   ②Add New Entry
   ③Add New Entry

   Blog Tool Window

2. *Add New Entry* ➡ **●**

   Blog Setting
   Blog Title
   Blog by send Mail
   Refer/Send by Yah...
   Refer/Send by PCS...

   Blog Setting Menu

3. *Blog Title* ➡ **●** ➡ Enter name ➡ **●**

4. *Blog by send Mail* ➡ **●**

   Blog Setting
   Blog's Email Addr...
   Blog's Title
   Blog's Text
   Picture Size
   M(640x640)
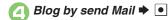
5. *Blog's Email Address* ➡ **●**
   ➡ Enter mail address ➡ **●**

6. [CLEAR/BACK] ➡ [Y!]

Saving Title/Text for Posts
   After **5**, *Blog's Title* or *Blog's Text*
   ➡ **●** ➡ Enter title or text ➡ **●** ➡ **6**
   ■ Saved title/text is entered automatically when posting.
Setting Image Size for Posting
   After **5**, *Picture Size* ➡ **●** ➡ Select size ➡ **●** ➡ **6**

Setup for Posting via the Internet

Save URL for Yahoo! Keitai or PC sites, or both.

1. In Blog Setting menu, *Blog Title* ➡ **●** ➡ Enter name ➡ **●**

2. *Refer/Send by Yahoo! Keitai* or *Refer/Send by PCSiteBrowser* ➡ **●**

3. *Blog's URL* ➡ **●** ➡ Enter URL ➡ **●**

4. *Refer Blog's URL* ➡ **●** ➡ Enter URL ➡ **●**

5. [CLEAR/BACK] ➡ [Y!]

Widgets & Entertainment

10

10-14

Posting to Blogs
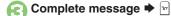
Complete setup for posting via mail/
Internet beforehand.

Posting via Mail

1 **In Blog Tool window, select entry ▶ ●**

2 ***Blog by send Mail* ▶ ●**
- S! Mail Composition window opens with address entered.
- Omit 2 if no URL is saved for posting.

3 **Complete message ▶ ▣**

Posting via the Internet

1 **In Blog Tool window, select entry ▶ ●**

2 ***Blog by send Browser* ▶ ●**
- Page of URL saved in *Blog's URL* opens.
- Omit 2 if no address is saved for posting.
- If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URLs for Yahoo! Keitai & PC Sites are Saved
After 2, select browser ▶ ●

Opening Blog Page

1 **In Blog Tool window, select entry ▶ ▣**
- Page of URL saved in *Refer Blog's URL* opens.
- If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URLs for Yahoo! Keitai & PC Sites are Saved
After 1, select browser ▶ ●

Mobile Widget

■ Managing

Opening properties	● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Widget Contents* ➡ ● ➡ Select widget ➡ ▣ ➡ *Details* ➡ ● ● Select widget other than *S!速報ニュース/S!ともだち状況*.

■ Settings

Canceling automatic updates	● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Refresh* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Receiving updates automatically while outside Japan	● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *AutoConnect Abroad* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Hiding confirmation outside Japan	● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Use Abroad* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Disabling cookies	● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Cookies* ➡ ● ➡ *Disabled* ➡ ●
Deleting cookies	● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete Cookies* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ Operations in Standby

Selecting widget display option	🔘 ➡ ▣ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Show Widget* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● Choose *Off* to disable widget display even when 🔘 is pressed; re-enable via *Show Widget* in Standby Display menu.
Logging in to Yahoo! JAPAN	🔘 ➡ ▣ ➡ *Yahoo!JAPAN log in* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions. ● To log out, select *Yahoo!JAPAN log out* in the steps above.
Moving widgets	🔘 ➡ ⊕ Select widget ➡ ▣ ➡ *Operation* ➡ ● ➡ *Change Layout* ➡ ● ➡ Specify target location ➡ ●
Moving widgets to front/back	🔘 ➡ ⊕ Select widget ➡ ▣ ➡ *Operation* ➡ ● ➡ *To Front* or *To Back* ➡ ●
Updating view	🔘 ➡ ⊕ Select widget ➡ ▣ ➡ *Operation* ➡ ● ➡ *Update View* ➡ ●
Slowing pointer speed	🔘 ➡ ▣ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Cursor Speed* ➡ ● ➡ *Slow* ➡ ●

■ Sheets

Editing sheet names	Start Here ⑤ ➜ ▢ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Sheet Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Change Sheet Name* ➜ ● ➜ See below
	Renaming Select sheet ➜ ● ➜ Enter name ➜ ●
	Resetting All Sheet Names ▢ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
Locking sheets	Start Here ⑤ ➜ ▢ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Sheet Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Set Sheet Lock* ➜ ● ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ● ➜ See below
	Activating Lock Select sheet ➜ ● ➜ *On* ➜ ●
	Changing Method for Temporary Access *Unlock Method* ➜ ● ➜ *No Password* ➜ ● ● Press ⑤, then select 🔒 and press ● to unlock sheet temporarily.

■ Removing Widgets

Removing multiple widgets at once	Start Here ⑤ ➜ ▢ ➜ *Operate from List* ➜ ● ➜ *Remove* ➜ ● ➜ See below
	All Widgets *Remove All* ➜ ● ➜ Select sheet ➜ ☑ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
	Selected Icons *Select & Remove* ➜ ● ➜ Select widget ➜ ● (☑) ➜ Complete selection ➜ ☑ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

■ S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Quick News)

Adding news items	⑤ ➜ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➜ ▢ ➜ *Operation* ➜ ● ➜ *Content Menu* ➜ ● ➜ *Add News* ➜ ● ➜ *S! Quick News List* ➜ ● ➜ *登録はこちら* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ Select genre ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Changing news scroll speed	⑤ ➜ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➜ ▢ ➜ *Operation* ➜ ● ➜ *Content Menu* ➜ ● ➜ *News Display* ➜ ● ➜ *News Speed* ➜ ● ➜ Select speed ➜ ●
Showing unread news only	⑤ ➜ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➜ ▢ ➜ *Operation* ➜ ● ➜ *Content Menu* ➜ ● ➜ *News Display* ➜ ● ➜ *Target News* ➜ ● ➜ *Unread Only* ➜ ●

■ S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Friend's Status)

Assigning members	⑤ ➜ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➜ ▢ ➜ *Operation* ➜ ● ➜ *Content Menu* ➜ ● ➜ *Assign Member* ➜ ● ➜ Select category ➜ ● ➜ Select entry/member ➜ ● ➜ *(Empty)* ➜ ●
Managing members	Start Here ⑤ ➜ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➜ ● ➜ ✚ Select member ➜ ▢ ➜ *Operation* ➜ ● ➜ *Content Menu* ➜ ● ➜ See below
	Deleting Members *Delete* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
	Changing Member Order *Move* ➜ ● ➜ ▢ (Up) or ☑ (Down) ➜ ●
	Changing Member Icons *Change Icon* ➜ ● ➜ Select Pictogram ➜ ●

S! Quick News

■ Opening/Updating Items

Setting S! Quick News automatic update	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Refresh* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select update interval, *On* or *Off* ➡ ● ● If a message appears, press ●. ● When Special is set to *On*, items are updated every four hours. ● When General is set to *On*, items are updated once a day. ● Updating items may incur high packet transmission fees. ● Only available in Japan.
Checking update schedule	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Check Schedule* ➡ ●
Deleting S! Quick News items	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News List* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ◙ ➡ See below **One Entry** 一件 ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **All Entries** 全件 ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Resetting S! Quick News List	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete S! Quick News Lists* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Not available during automatic updates.

■ Other

Changing background image	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Change Skin* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ●
Accessing source sites	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News List* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ● ➡ Select linked title ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Disabling image download	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Show Image* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

S! Information Channel

■ Receiving Information

Suppressing Information window for new received info	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ● ➡ *Notification* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Requesting re-delivery	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ● ➡ *Get Latest Contents* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ Information Pages

Changing Display Size	On a page, ◙ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Display Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●
Changing scroll unit	On a page, ◙ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Unit* ➡ ● ➡ Select unit ➡ ●

Copying text	On a page, ⊠ ➡ *Copy Text* ➡ ● ➡ Select first character ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ●
Saving files to Data Folder	On a page, ⊠ ➡ *Save Items* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ *Save* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ● ● Some files are saved automatically.
Opening page properties	On a page, ⊠ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

■ Weather Indicators

Checking weather forecast	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ● ➡ *Weather Indicator* ➡ ● ➡ *Weather* ➡ ●
Changing weather forecast page font size	On a page, ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●
Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ● ➡ *Weather Indicator* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Standby Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ● ➡ *Weather Indicator* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Icon Update* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Suppressing Information window for weather updates	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ● ➡ *Weather Indicator* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Weather Notif.* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

e-Books

Copying text	In open page, ⊡ ➡ *文字列をコピー* ➡ ● ➡ Select first character ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ●
Opening non-001SH e-Books (Library)	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *e-Book Viewer* ➡ ⊠ ➡ Select file ➡ ● ● Some files may not open.
Using Library	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *e-Book Viewer* ➡ ⊠ ➡ See below **Adding Folders** ⊠ ➡ *New Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● **Switching Folders** ⊠ ➡ *Switch Folders* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● **Renaming Folders/Files** Select folder/file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● **Moving Files** Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ *Move here* ➡ ● **Deleting Folders/Files** Select folder/file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Opening File Properties** Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

Widgets & Entertainment

10

S! Friend's Status

■ Members & Groups

Adding members	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ Select Group ➡ 🖂 ➡ *Add Member* ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select entry or enter phone number ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting members	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ Select Group ➡ Select member ➡ 🖂 ➡ *Registration Release* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Cancellation notice is sent; deleted members cannot be re-registered for 24 hours.
Moving members	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ Select Group ➡ Select member ➡ 🖂 ➡ *Change Group* ➡ ● ➡ Select target Group ➡ ●
Renaming Groups	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ Select Group ➡ 🖂 ➡ *Edit Group Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
Rejecting requests	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ 🖂 ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Request Reply* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Rejecting Requests from Unsaved Numbers** *Confirm if Registered* ➡ ● ● Rejection notice is sent to rejected numbers automatically. **Rejecting All Requests** *Always Ignore* ➡ ● ● Rejection notice is sent to all requesters automatically.

■ Status & Availability

Saving custom Availability combinations	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ 🖂 ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Answer Status* ➡ ● ➡ *User Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ● ➡ Select Availability ➡ ● ➡ ⊠
Changing Status Icon Pictogram or Status Label description	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ 🖂 ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Status Setting* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ Select template ➡ Select Status ➡ ● ➡ *Status Icon* ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ● ➡ *Status Label* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ ⊠

■ Status Templates

Resetting templates	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ 私の状況 ➡ ● ➡ Select Status ➡ ● ➡ See below **One Template** ⊡ Select template ➡ 🖂 ➡ *Reset* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **All Templates** 🖂 ➡ *Reset All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ Member Status & Notices

Updating manually	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ 🖂 ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Status Update* ➡ ●
Opening notices	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ 🖂 ➡ *Status Notif. List* ➡ ● ➡ Select notice ➡ ●

■ **Sending Image**

Sending My Details image	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ Select Group ➡ Select member ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Send Image* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Available when your handset number is saved in Phone Book on member's handset.

S! Circle Talk

■ **Member List**

Editing individual members	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ● ➡ Select member ➡ ⊠ ➡ See below
	Replacing Members *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ●
	Deleting Members *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Editing Groups	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ● ➡ Select Group ➡ ⊠ ➡ See below
	Editing Group Name/Members *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Select target ➡ ● ➡ Edit/enter ➡ ● ➡ ⊻
	Deleting Group Members *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Select member ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ⊻
	Deleting Groups *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ **Settings**

Disabling Loudspeaker	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Loudspeaker* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Incoming Calls* ➡ ● ➡ *Voice Calls* or *Video Calls* ➡ ● ➡ *Accept Calls* ➡ ●

Blog Tool

Editing entries	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Blog Tool* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit/enter ➡ ● ➡ 🔤 ➡ ⊻ ● For *Blog Title*, omit step of pressing 🔤 after editing.
Deleting entries	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Blog Tool* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

S! Quick News

Cannot receive content updates

- Update may fail out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
- Auto Refresh does not affect S! Quick News List News Flash update items overnight.
- USIM Card replacement cancels Auto Refresh.

S! Friend's Status

Cannot use S! Friend's Status

- Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

Handset rejected a registration request automatically

- Rejection notice is sent automatically when 30 members are already registered or handset fails to respond within two hours.

Registration request arrived from a deleted member

- Registration request arrives when a member fails to receive cancellation notice within 24 hours.

Registration request was sent to a member automatically

- Registration request is sent automatically when handset fails to receive rejection/cancellation notice within 24 hours.

Cannot create Status Templates

- Three templates may already be added; reset one and retry.

S! Circle Talk

Cannot use S! Circle Talk

- Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

S! Circle Talk starts automatically

- Check My Status; handset accepts S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Auto Join*.

Cannot accept S! Circle Talk requests

- Check My Status; handset rejects S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Join NG*.

11

Handset Security

Operations Security

Function Lock

Restrict access to handset functions.
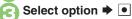
Auto	Lock when Display turns off or handset is closed
Once	Lock immediately; setting is canceled once handset is unlocked
At Power On	Lock when powering on; Handset Code entry window opens

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/⊠* ➡ *Locks* ➡ ●

Locks Menu

2 *Function Lock* ➡ ●

3 Select option ➡ ●

Unlocking Temporarily
   While handset is locked, enter Handset Code ➡ ●
Available Operations while Function Lock is Active
● Power on/off, answer calls, place callers on hold, end calls, etc.

PIN Entry

Activate PIN Entry to require PIN entry each time handset is powered on.

1 **In Locks menu, *PIN Entry* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●**

2 *On* ➡ ● ➡ Enter PIN ➡ ●

Secure Remote Lock

Lock a lost handset remotely via PC or another handset. Secure Remote Lock disables all operations except powering on. For more about Secure Remote Lock, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.15-22**) or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-39**).

Advanced

Information Security

Application Lock

Restrict access to these functions:

Phone Book	Mail
Calendar/Tasks	Notepad
Yahoo! Keitai	

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⌾ *Phone/☂* ➡ *Locks* ➡ ●

Locks Menu

2. *Application Lock* ➡ ●
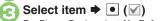
3. **Select item ➡ ● (☑)**
   For Phone Book, select *No Refer* (to hide entry names in message lists, Call Log, etc.) or *Refer* and press ●.

4. ⌨ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

Temporary Access to Functions
● When accessing functions, enter Handset Code and press ●.

History Lock

Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records.

1. **In Locks menu, *History Lock* ➡ ●**

2. **Select item ➡ ● (☑)**

3. ⌨ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

Temporary Access to Records
● When accessing records, enter Handset Code and press ●.

Show Secret Data

Activate Show Secret Data to access Secret entries.

1. **In Locks menu, *Show Secret Data* ➡ ●**

2. *On* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

Using Function Control

Restrict access to the following functions remotely. (Available for administrators.)

Camera	**S! Mail**
Infrared	**Attach File**
Bluetooth	**Yahoo! Keitai**
Memory Card	**PC Site Browser**
USB	**IP Service**
Digital TV	**S! Appli**
Messaging	**PC Mail**
Voice Call (placing)	**Streaming**
Video Call (placing)	**Flash®**
USIM (writing)	**Mobile Widget**

- A message appears while Function Control is in progress.
- May be unavailable depending on subscription. For details, contact the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-39**).

■ **When Accessing Restricted Functions**
A message (example shown below) appears; the function is inaccessible.

Message may not appear for some functions.

Checking Restriction Status

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Phone/*➡ ➡ *Locks* ➡ ●

2. *Function Control* ➡ ●

- Restriction status appears for each function.

PIN Entry

Changing PIN	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Phone/*➡ ➡ *Locks* ➡ ● ➡ *PIN Entry* ➡ ● ➡ *Change PIN* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter current PIN** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter new PIN** ➡ ● ➡ **Re-enter new PIN** ➡ ● ● Activate PIN Entry first.

Secure Remote Lock

Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Phone/*➡ ➡ *Locks* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Lock Message* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Saving Message *Message* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter message** ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Checking Message *Check Message* ➡ ●
	Hiding Message *Display Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Don't Show* ➡ ●

12

**Data Folder &
Memory Card**

Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

■ **Preset Folders**

	Contents
Pictures[*]	Still images
DCIM	Still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to *DCIM*)
Ring Songs·Tones[*]	Downloaded melodies and other sound files
S! Appli[*]	S! Applications
Widget[*]	Widgets
Music[*]	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files
Videos[*]	Video images
Books[*]	Downloaded e-Books, etc.
Customized Screen[*]	Downloaded Customized Screen files
Status Templates	Combinations of Status Icon and Status Label for S! Friend's Status
Flash®	Downloaded Flash® (animation) files
Other Documents	Other files (Dictionary files, etc.)

[*]Contains corresponding Yahoo! Keitai menu shortcut.

Checking Memory Status

● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Status* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ●

■ The category *Others:* includes Data Folder management files, Saved Pages, etc.

● Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.
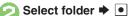
Opening Files

1
● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ●

```
                    15:05
     Data Folder
  Pictures
  DCIM
  Ring Songs・Tones
  S! Appli
  Widget
```

- Unselectable files/folders appear in gray.
- To show/hide sub folders, select a folder and press ⊻.

2
Select folder ➡ ●

To open a sub folder, select it and press ●.

```
                    15:05
      Pictures
101001_150525.jpg

  My Pict.

  MailArt

  Charact.
```

File List

3
Select file ➡ ●

- The content plays or appears.
- To return to file list, press ⁰⁰⁰.

Handling Open Images
- Press ● to enlarge, or press #⅗/○ or ⁰⁰⁰/◌ to open next or previous image. Press ⊻ to rotate 90 degrees clockwise.

Attaching to Mail
After ②, select file ➡ ☒ ➡ *Send/ Blog* ➡ ● ➡ *As Message* ➡ ●
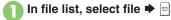- ■ If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.

Copy Protected Files (👆 or 💸)
- Some functions may be unavailable.

Slide Show

Available for Pictures or DCIM folder.

1
In file list, select file ➡ ☒

2
Slide Show ➡ ●
- Slide Show starts.

3
● ➡ Slide Show stops
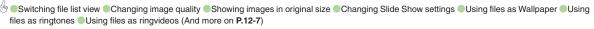
Changing Interval
After ②, ☒ ➡ *Speed* ➡ ● ➡ Select speed ➡ ●
- ■ When Speed is set to *Manual*, press ●/ #⅗ or ⁰⁰⁰ to advance or reverse frame.

Note
- Backlight stays on during Slide Show; exit to save battery power.

Advanced

✍ ●Switching file list view ●Changing image quality ●Showing images in original size ●Changing Slide Show settings ●Using files as Wallpaper ●Using files as ringtones ●Using files as ringvideos (And more on **P.12-7**)

Managing Files & Folders

Adding Folders

May be unavailable for some folders.

1 ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ●


```
              1505
        Pictures
101001_150525.jpg

My Pict.

MailArt
```

File List
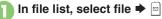
2 □
If *Download* is selected or folder is empty, skip ahead to **4**.

3 *Manage Items* ➡ ●

4 *Create Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Moving/Copying Files

Some files may not be moved/copied.

1 In file list, select file ➡ □

2 *Move* or *Copy* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone* or *Memory Card* ➡ ●
● If prompted, select a destination folder and press ●.

3 *Move here* or *Copy here* ➡ ●

Selecting Multiple Files

1 In file list, ⌨

2 Select file ➡ ●
● Repeat **2** as needed. (To uncheck, select a file with ⌄ and press ●.)

Hiding Folders

Restrict access to created folders.
Only handset folders can be hidden.

1 In file list, select folder ➡ □

2 *Set Secret* ➡ ●

Accessing Secret Folders (Unlock Temporarily)
[File List] □ ➡ *Unlock Temporarily* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●
Canceling Secret
Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select Secret folder ➡ □ ➡ *Unset Secret* ➡ ●

Advanced

ⓑ ●Renaming folders ●Opening file properties ●Renaming files ●Sorting files ●Deleting files & created folders ●Handling SVG files (**P.12-8**)

Using Memory Card

Use microSD/microSDHC Memory Card (hereafter "Memory Card") to save and organize files for use on 001SH.
● Use recommended Memory Cards only. For details, see **P.15-22** "microSD Memory Card Compatibility."
● **If inserted, captured images, downloads and other files save to Memory Card. (My Pictograms and Graphic Mail templates save to handset.)**

Important Memory Card Usage Notes
● Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset.
● Keep Memory Cards out of infant's reach; may cause suffocation if swallowed.
● Do not touch terminals or expose them to metal objects.
● SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/ alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
● Never power off or remove battery while files are being accessed.
● Be careful not to erase or overwrite files accidentally.

Inserting & Removing

Power off first.

1 **Remove battery (P.15-4)**

2 **Insert card**

● With terminal side down, insert card until it clicks.
● Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot.

3 **Insert battery, then close Battery Cover (P.15-4)**

If 🔣 Appears after Power On
● Memory Card may not be inserted properly; reinsert the card.

Removing Memory Card
● Gently push in card and release it; card pops out. Pull card straight out gently.

Data Folder & Memory Card

12

Format Card

When using a new Memory Card for the first time, format it on the handset before trying to save files, etc. Format Card deletes all Memory Card files, even those created on other devices.

1 ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ○ *Phone/🔁* ➜ *Memory Card* ➜ ●

2 *Format Card* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

● Offline Mode is set. Handset transmissions are suspended until format is complete.

3 *Yes* ➜ ●
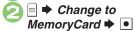
● To cancel, choose *No* and press ●.

Precaution

● Never power off or remove battery while formatting; may cause damage.

Opening Memory Card Files

Follow these steps to open files via Data Folder:

1 ● ➜ *Data Folder* ➜ ●

2 ✉ ➜ *Change to MemoryCard* ➜ ●

Memory Card Indicator

Data Folder
📷Pictures
📁DCIM
📁Ring Songs・Tones
📁S! Appli
📁Widget

● 🔁 (Memory Card indicator) appears.

3 Select folder ➜ ●

To open a sub folder, select it and press ●.

4 Select file ➜ ●

Switching to Handset Data Folder
After **1**, ✉ ➜ *Change to Phone* ➜ ● ➜ From **3**

Data Folder & Memory Card

12

📁 **Advanced**

⅌ ●Using HTML files on Memory Card (**P.12-8**)

File/Folder View Settings

Switching file list view	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ ▣ ➡ *Manage Items* ➡ ● ➡ *Change List View* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● Not available for some folders.
Changing image quality	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ▣ *Image Quality* (*Picture Quality* for Flash® files) ➡ ● ➡ Select quality ➡ ●
Showing images in original size	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ▣ ➡ *Switch Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Original Size* ➡ ●
Changing Slide Show settings	Start Here ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ▣ ➡ *Slide Show* ➡ ● ➡ ▣ ➡ See below
	Playing Once *Repeat* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
	Playing Music *BGM Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
	Changing Music *BGM Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Play Ring Tones* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●
Hiding Softkeys in image view	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ▣ *SW Guide Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Using Files/Folders

Using files as Wallpaper	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ▣ ➡ *Set as Wallpaper* ➡ ● ➡ ● ● For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.
Using files as ringtones	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ▣ ➡ *Set as Ringtone* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ● If prompted, enter ring time and press ●. ● If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.
Using files as ringvideos	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ▣ ➡ *Set as Ring Video* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ● If prompted, enter ring time and press ●.
Saving Phone Book entries	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ▣ ➡ *Save to Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ ▾ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.
Activating mobile camera, etc. in corresponding folders	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ ▣ ➡ *Take Picture*, *Record Video* or *Record Voice* ➡ ●

Data Folder & Memory Card

12

12-7

Managing Files/Folders

Renaming folders	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ 🖻 *Manage Items* ➡ ● ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ● Assign different names to folders within a layer.
Opening file properties	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ 🖻 *Details* ➡ ●
Renaming files	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ 🖻 *Manage Items* ➡ ● ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
Sorting files	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ 🖻 *Manage Items* ➡ ● ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ●
Deleting files & created folders	Start Here ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ See below **Single Files** Select file ➡ 🖻 *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Folder & Files Within** Select folder ➡ 🖻 *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Handling SVG files	Start Here ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Other Documents* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ See below **Line Scroll** ✛ **Page Scroll** 2⍻ (Up), 8⍻ (Down), 6⍻ (Right), 4⍻ (Left) **Zoom** 1⍻ (Zoom out), 3⍻ (Zoom in) **Rotate** 7⍻ (Counterclockwise), 9⍻ (Clockwise) **Key Action Mode** 0⍻ **Default View** 5⍻

Memory Card

Using HTML files on Memory Card	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ✛ *Phone/*📇 ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ *SD Local Contents* ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ●

Managing Files/Folders

❓ Cannot copy files

- Files may be copy/forward protected. (If a copy/forward protected file is included in selected files, only the remaining files are copied.)

❓ Copied/moved files cannot be used on PCs, etc.

- Some files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.

❓ Cannot sort files properly

- Check the number of files/folders in the folder. Files/folders in folders containing 961 or more files/folders are sorted per 240 files/folders in the order they were saved. The order may change when a file/folder is deleted, etc.

❓ Cannot use some characters in file/folder names

- Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ., <, >, |, ?, ⧸ and " are not supported.

13

**Connectivity &
File Backup**

Infrared

Wirelessly transfer files between 001SH and compatible devices.

Transferable Files

Phone Book	**Received Msg.**
Calendar	**Sent Messages**
Tasks	**Drafts**
Notepad	**Templates (Messaging)**
Bookmarks	**Data Folder**

- Copy/forward protected files are not transferable.
- Some files may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not be saved properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.
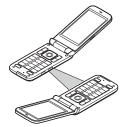
Getting Started

Infrared Precautions

Align Infrared Ports of both devices.
- Handset cannot receive connection requests during Software Update.

- Do not place objects between devices.
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions. Eyesight may be affected.
- 001SH complies with IrMC 1.1, however, some files may not transfer properly.

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer single files
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

Authorization Code
- Four-digit code required for Infrared transfers. All File Transfers are possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)

Transferring Files via Infrared

Receiving Files

1 ⊙ (Long)

- Infrared is activated. (Alternatively, activate it via Main Menu.)
- Handset receives files if sent within three minutes.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.
- To cancel Infrared, Long Press ⊙.

2 Connection request arrives

Request Window

3 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press ⍩.

■ Subsequent Operations

■ One File Transfer
Yes ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press ●.

■ All File Transfer (Adding Files)
Yes ➡ ● ➡ Enter Authorization Code ➡ ● ➡ *As New Items* ➡ ●

■ All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)
Yes ➡ ● ➡ Enter Authorization Code ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All & Save* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

Sending Files

■ One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1 ⊙ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⌷ ➡ *Send Entry* ➡ ●

2 *Via Infrared* ➡ ●

3 *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts
- When complete, entry search window returns.

■ All File Transfer

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Infrared* ➡ ●

2 *Send All* ➡ ●

3 *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

4 Select item ➡ ● (☐/✅) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ⍩

5 Enter Authorization Code ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts ➡ ●

Sending Phone Book
- In 5, Picture transfer confirmation appears; choose *Yes* or *No* and press ●.

Advanced

🖑 ●Activating Infrared via Main Menu ●Sending My Details ●Sending non-Phone Book files (**P.13-17**)

Exchanging Contact Information

Exchange name, phone numbers, mail addresses, and other contact info with other compatible handsets via infrared. Read **P.13-2** "Infrared Precautions" beforehand.

Receiving Profiles

1 **(Long)**

Exchange Profile Menu

2 *Receive* ➔ ●

3 **Profile received**

Saved
10-10-01 15-05 to
[Phone] Phone
Book.

● Received profile is saved to Phone Book.

Sending Profiles

1 **In Exchange Profile menu,** *Send* ➔ ● ➔ **Transfer starts**

Changing Profile Items to Send
  [Exchange Profile Menu] *Send Settings* ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● (☐/☑) ➔ Complete selection ➔ ✉
Opening My Details
  [Exchange Profile Menu] *My Details* ➔ ●

Bluetooth®

Wirelessly transfer files/data between
001SH and compatible devices (watches,
handsfree devices, etc.).

- For transferable files, see **P.13-2**.
- 001SH supports simultaneous connection
  with two devices. (May be unavailable
  depending on the device type.)
- Bluetooth® connection may not be possible
  with some Bluetooth® devices.
  - Handset shall be connected to certified
    Bluetooth® devices that meet the
    specification standards developed by the
    Bluetooth SIG.
  - Data transfers may fail depending on
    characteristics or specifications of the
    certified Bluetooth® devices.
  - Noise may interfere with wireless or
    handsfree conversations.
- TV audio is supported only on SCMS-T
  DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® devices.

Getting Started

Bluetooth® Precautions

Check transmission range of your Bluetooth®
device to use with handset properly.
Maximum transmission range for transfers
between 001SH handsets is ten meters.
(Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate may
vary depending on conditions.)

Important Handsfree Device Usage Note
- Handle call operations on the device in use.

Bluetooth® Watches
- Compatible Bluetooth® watches support
  these functions:
  - Clock sync
  - News notice
  - Remote Shutter
  - Quick Silent
  - Hold calls
  - Alarm notice
  - Mail notice
  - Mode Settings
  - Caller ID notice
  - Show Operator Name
- For details about functions/operations,
  see the Bluetooth® watch guide.

Bluetooth® Connection

Sender	Recipient
Search for devices →	
Select device ←	Activate Bluetooth®
▼	
Request connection →	
	▼
	Accept
	▼
Connection complete	

Authorization Code
- 4 to 16-digit code required for Bluetooth®
  connections with devices not compliant
  with Bluetooth® specification Ver. 2.1.
  Pairing is possible when codes match.
  - For handsfree devices, enter specified
    Authorization Code.

Connectivity & File Backup
13

Advanced

⚙ ●Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests ●Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled ●Switching audio output to wireless device
●Changing Bluetooth® name for handset ●Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties ●Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset Clock
●Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses (And more on **P.13-17** - **13-18**)

13-5

Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

Activating Bluetooth®

1 ⊡ (Long)
- Bluetooth® is activated.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests from unpaired handsfree devices, etc.
- To cancel Bluetooth®, Long Press ⊡.

Connecting Bluetooth® Devices

Device Search & Pairing

Activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with first.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ●

<div style="border:1px solid; padding:4px;">
🔋 15:05 📶
Bluetooth
Switch On/Off
Add Device
Paired Devices
Send All
Setting Watch
</div>

Bluetooth Menu

2 *Add Device* ➡ ●

<div style="border:1px solid; padding:4px;">
Set the other
Bluetooth device
ready for paring.
See the device
manual for the
procedure.
☑Show next time.
</div>

- To hide message, press ⊡ before ❸.

3 ●
- Found devices are listed after search.
- To cancel search, press ⊡.

4 Select device ➡ ●
If a confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●.

5 *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Pairing complete**
- If the other device is a keyboard, follow onscreen instructions.

Connecting Devices Not Compliant with Bluetooth® Specification Ver. 2.1
In ❺, enter the same Authorization Code for handset and the other device ➡ ● ➡ Paring complete
- On the other device, complete code entry within 30 seconds.
- Code entry is omitted for paired devices.

Advanced

● Activating Bluetooth® via Main Menu (**P.13-17**)
● Editing Paired Device list ● Disconnecting handsfree devices, etc. ● Connecting devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service
● Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection (**P.13-18**)

Connecting Paired Handsfree Devices, Etc.

1 **In Bluetooth menu, *Paired Devices* ➜ ●**

Paired Device List

2 **Select device ➜ ●**

If handset is already connected to another device, disconnection confirmation may appear; choose *Yes* and press ●.

● The device is connected and ☑ (preferred) appears.

Accepting Connection Requests

Follow these steps to accept connection requests from unpaired devices:

1 **Connection request arrives**

Request Window

2 *Yes* ➜ ●

3 *Yes* ➜ ●

● If the other device is a keyboard, follow onscreen instructions.

Connecting Devices Not Compliant with Bluetooth® Specification Ver. 2.1
In 3, enter the same Authorization Code as sender's ➜ ●

■ Complete code entry within 30 seconds.

Bluetooth®

Transferring Files

Follow the steps below to exchange files with paired devices.

- For transferable files, see **P.13-2**.
- When requested, enter Authorization Code.

Receiving Files

1 **Connection request arrives**

Calling not
available during
operation. OK?

Yes
No

Request Window

2 **Perform subsequent operations**

- To cancel transfer, press ⌨.

■ **Subsequent Operations**
●**One File Transfer**

Yes ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press ●.

●**All File Transfer (Adding Files)**
Yes ➡ ● ➡ *As New Items* ➡ ●

●**All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)**
Yes ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All & Save* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

Sending Files

■ **One File Transfer**
Example: Phone Book entry

1 ⌕ ➡ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Send Entry* ➡ ●

2 *Via Bluetooth* ➡ ●

3 Select device ➡ ●

4 *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts

- When complete, entry search window returns.

■ **All File Transfer**

1 In Bluetooth menu, *Send All* ➡ ●

2 Select device ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

3 Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

4 Select item ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ⌨ ➡ Transfer starts ➡ ●

Sending Phone Book
- In 4, Picture transfer confirmation appears; choose *Yes* or *No* and press ●.

Advanced

🖐 ●Sending My Details ●Sending non-Phone Book files (**P.13-18**)

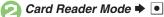Connectivity & File Backup

13

13-8

Connecting PC

Accessing Memory Card
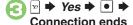
Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing card from handset. USB Cable may be purchased separately.

1 **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**

```
"Tll        ⊠ ⟐ 15:05 Ⅲ
        USB Mode
Modem/Data
Card Reader Mode
```

2 *Card Reader Mode* ➡ ⚫
● Use PC to access Memory Card.

3 ☒ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⚫ ➡ **Connection ends**
● Disconnect USB Cable.

If Menu in ❶ **Does Not Appear**
● Follow these steps:
    ⚫ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ⚫ ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity*
    ➡ **From** ❷
■ Operations on the PC may be required; if prompted, follow onscreen instructions.

Utility Software (Japanese)

For more PC-related operations, download Utility Software (including USB Cable driver) from the following URL.
Utility Software

http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/download/tools/utility/

Mobile Data Communication Fees
● Using the Internet by connecting handset to PC/PDA via USB Cable or Bluetooth® may incur high charges as large-volume packet transmissions tend to occur in a short period of time.

Basics

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset as needed.
Specify frequency for Auto Backup.
Auto Backup requires a subscription to S! Addressbook Back-up.

Supported Items

In manual backup, items with * are selectable at once via **Check Selection** in Options menu.

Phone Book*	**Sent Messages***
Calendar*	**Drafts***
Tasks*	**Templates (Messaging)**
Bookmarks*	**Contents Keys**
Notepad*	**Data Folder**
Mail Groups	**User Dictionary**
Received Msg.*	

Auto Backup Compatibility
● These items are not backed up automatically:
  ■ Mail Groups
  ■ Templates (Messaging)
  ■ Data Folder
  ■ User Dictionary

Precautions

● Not available if battery is low.
● Backup may fail if Memory Card memory is low.
● Some items may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not transfer properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

Auto Delete (Auto Backup Files)
● Auto Backup saves up to three backup files for each item; when full, oldest files are deleted automatically to save new ones.
Contents Keys
● Manual backup overwrites Contents Keys in Memory Card. Perform Restore beforehand to keep previous Keys.
● In Auto Backup, Contents Keys are added to Memory Card.
Restoring Backed Up Content
● Corresponding handset content is overwritten depending on Restore option.

Backup & Restore

Manual Backup

Follow these steps to back up selected items at once:

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Phone/➥* ➡ *Backup/ Restore* ➡ ●

   > ```
   > Backup/Restore
   > Backup All Items
   > Backup Selected I…
   > Restore All Items
   > Restore Selected …
   > ```
   > Backup/Restore Menu

2. *Backup Selected Items* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

3. *Yes* ➡ ●
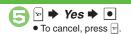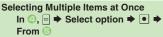
4. Select item ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ **Complete selection**
   - For *Phone Book*, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* or *No* and press ●.

5. ⊻ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
   - To cancel, press ⊻.

6. **Backup complete** ➡ ● ➡ ●

Selecting Multiple Items at Once
In ④, ▣ ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ From ❺

Selecting/Canceling All Items
In ④, ▣ ➡ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➡ ●

Auto Backup

Back up information to Memory Card at a specified frequency automatically.
To enable Auto Backup, set Auto Sync Settings (S! Addressbook Back-up) to *On*; Auto Backup will be performed at 2:00 AM on the same day of the week by default.

Precautions
- Auto Backup does not start when:
  - Memory Card is not inserted
  - Battery is low/dead and not being charged
  - Another function is active (end it and return to Standby)

At Auto Backup Time

Backup starts; Information window opens upon completion.
Select *Complete Auto Save* and press ● to open backup result.

Advanced

◉ ●Backing up all items ●Encoding data for backup ●Deleting backup files (**P.13-19**)

Connectivity & File Backup

13

13-11

Changing Settings

Follow these steps to back up once a week automatically:

1. **In Backup/Restore menu, *Settings/Manage* ➜ ●**

2. ***Auto Backup* ➜ ● ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ●**

```
┌──────────────────────┐
│ Yil        ⊡   15:05 🔋│
│    Auto Backup       │
│ Frequency Settings   │
│ Friday 02:00         │
│ Backup Items         │
│                      │
│ Encode Settings      │
│ On                   │
└──────────────────────┘
```
Auto Backup Menu

3. ***Frequency Settings* ➜ ●**

4. ***Once Every Week* ➜ ● ➜ Select day ➜ ● ➜ Enter time ➜ ●**

5. ***Backup Items* ➜ ● ➜ Select item (□/☑) ➜ Complete selection ➜ �驰**

Backing Up Once a Month
In ④, *Once Every Month* ➜ ● ➜ Enter date ➜ ● ➜ Enter time ➜ ● ➜ ⑤

Disabling Auto Backup
In ④, *Don't Auto Backup* ➜ ●

Disabling Encoding
[Auto Backup Menu] *Encode Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ●
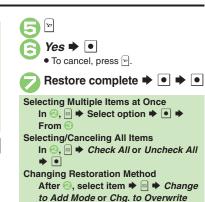
Memory Card to Handset

Follow these steps to restore selected items:

1. **In Backup/Restore menu, *Restore Selected Items* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●**

2. **Select item ➜ ● (□/☑) ➜ Complete selection**

3. **⊰**
   ● If no file list appears, skip ahead to ⑤.

4. **Select file ➜ ●**
   ● Repeat ④ to complete selection.

5. **⊰**

6. ***Yes* ➜ ●**
   ● To cancel, press ⊰.

7. **Restore complete ➜ ● ➜ ●**

Selecting Multiple Items at Once
In ②, ▤ ➜ Select option ➜ ● ➜ From ③

Selecting/Canceling All Items
In ②, ▤ ➜ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➜ ●

Changing Restoration Method
After ②, select item ➜ ▤ ➜ *Change to Add Mode* or *Chg. to Overwrite Mode* ➜ ● ➜ From ③

Advanced

About SAB

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB. Set auto synchronization frequency as needed.

Phone Book ←→ Synchronize ←→ Server

Phone Book

Edit on PC → Import from/Export to PC
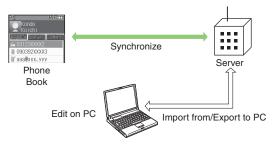
- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (**P.13-14**).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online.
- For more about SAB, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.15-22**).
- Synchronization incurs packet transmission fees.

Auto Synchronization
- After subscription to SAB, receiving subscription confirmation message or retrieving Network Information activates auto synchronization (Auto Sync Settings: *On*, Set Frequency: *After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)*, Sync Mode Setting: *Normal*); Phone Book changes are added to SAB automatically.
- Cancel auto synchronization as needed. However, it reactivates after Network Information retrieval.
- Handset makes up to three attempts to synchronize automatically.

SAB Sync Commands & Features

Synchronization	Normal	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB[1]
	Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB[2]
	Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB[3]
	Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book[4]
	Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book[5]
Edit on PC	Import from PC	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	Export to PC	Export SAB content to PC address book
	Sync Lock	Prevent synchronization from handset
Send Notice[6]	Birthday Notification	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset
	Email Address Notification[7]	Send new handset mail address to specified addresses
	"Disaster Message Board" Message Notification[8]	Send emergency message board update to specified addresses
Spam Filter	Tomodachi Email Filter[9]	Always accept messages from mail addresses saved in SAB

[1] If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.
[2] Unrelated SAB changes remain.
[3] Any existing SAB content is deleted.
[4] Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.
[5] Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.
[6] Access this function via handset (My SoftBank; Japanese) or a PC.
[7] Backup resets notification setting; handset address is sent to all addresses.
[8] Backup resets notification setting; updates are not sent to any address.
[9] Export Phone Book content to SAB beforehand.

Service Usage Outline

Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank Shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank (Japanese).

↓

Receive Notice

After subscription, password information arrives via SMS.

● Your handset number and password are required to access SAB via a PC.

↓

Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

Precautions

■ **Unsynchronizable Items**

These Phone Book settings are lost:

■ Picture, Tone, Vibration

■ **Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion**

● When no Phone Book content exists, performing synchronization via *Normal*, *Sync from Client* or *Backup* deletes all SAB content.
● When no SAB content exists, performing synchronization via *Normal*, *Sync from Server* or *Restore* deletes all Phone Book content.

■ **Phone Book ⇔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities**

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, synchronization reflects lower limit.

■ **Contract Termination**

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

■ **SAB Transfers to New Handsets**

● **SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets**
  SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.
● **Other SoftBank 3G Handsets**
  SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.
● **V8 Series**
  Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

■ **When Double Number is Active**

Regardless of usage mode setting, all Phone Book content is backed up.

Using Sync Commands
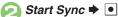
Normal (Start Sync)

Synchronize Phone Book and SAB via Normal.

1. ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Addressbook Back-up* ➡ ●

   ```
   ┌──────────────────┐
   │▾▾▾        15:05 🔋│
   │   S! Addressbook  │
   │ Start Sync        │
   │ Details           │
   │                   │
   └──────────────────┘
   ```

   S! Addressbook Menu

2. *Start Sync* ➡ ●
   - Synchronization starts; when complete, details appear.

3. ● ➡ **Synchronization complete**

Canceling Synchronization
🔄 ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ●

Other Sync Commands

Available Commands:

Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB
Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB; any existing SAB content is deleted
Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book
Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book; any existing Phone Book content is deleted
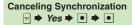
If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), synchronization is performed via Normal regardless of selection.

1. In S! Addressbook menu, *Details* ➡ ●

2. *Backup/Restore* ➡ ●

3. Select command ➡ ●
   - Synchronization starts; when complete, details appear.

4. ● ➡ **Synchronization complete**

Canceling Synchronization
🔄 ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ●

Connectivity & File Backup

13

Advanced

🔲 ●Opening log ●Deleting log records (**P.13-19**)

Changing Auto Sync Settings

Follow these steps to synchronize once a week automatically:

1. **In S! Addressbook menu, *Details* ➡ ●**

2. ***Auto Sync Settings* ➡ ●**

3. ***Set Frequency* ➡ ●**

4. ***Weekly* ➡ ● ➡ Select day ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●**

5. ***Sync Mode Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select command ➡ ● ➡ 🅨**

Synchronizing Once a Month
In 4, *Monthly* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date ➡ ● ➡ Enter hour ➡ ● ➡ 5

Disabling Auto Synchronization
In 3, *Set On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ 🅨
■ To re-enable, choose *On* and press ● then press 🅨; synchronization starts.

Infrared

Activating Infrared via Main Menu	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Infrared* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On(3 min.)* ➡ ●
Sending My Details	● ➡ 0⁺ ➡ ▣ ➡ *Send My Card* ➡ ● ➡ *Via Infrared* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Transfer starts**
Sending non-Phone Book files	In file list, select file ➡ ▣ ➡ *Send* (or *Send/ Blog*) ➡ ● ➡ *Via Infrared* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Transfer starts**

Bluetooth®

■ General

Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Visibility* ➡ ● ➡ *Hide My Phone* ➡ ●
Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Bluetooth Timeout* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●
Switching audio output to wireless device	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⓑ*Sound Output* ➡ ● ➡ *Bluetooth Device* ➡ ● • *Bluetooth Device* is set automatically when connecting to wireless Headphones.
Changing Bluetooth® name for handset	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Device Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Using handsfree device as primary means of conversation	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Handsfree Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Handsfree Mode* ➡ ●
Avoiding connection requests from Bluetooth®-compatible S! Applications in Standby, etc.	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli Request* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Receiving connection requests while connected to a device	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Plural Connect Standby* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Details* ➡ ● • Press ▣ to view service details.
Activating Bluetooth® via Main Menu	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

■ Bluetooth® Watches

Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset Clock	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Setting Watch* ➡ ● ➡ *Set BT-Watch Time* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.
Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Setting Watch* ➡ ● ➡ *Notification* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Permit* or *Prohibit* ➡ ● ● Register a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.

■ Paired Devices

Editing Paired Device list	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Paired Devices* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ▣ ➡ See below **Renaming Paired Devices** *Change Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● **Deleting Paired Devices** *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● To delete a device connected to handset, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Disconnecting handsfree devices, etc.	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Paired Devices* ➡ ● ➡ Select connected device ➡ ●
Connecting devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Paired Devices* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ▣ ➡ *Select Service* ➡ ● ➡ *Handsfree function* or *Audio function* ➡ ●

Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Paired Devices* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ▣ ➡ *Set to Prior Connect* ➡ ● ➡ See below **For Handsfree Telephony** *Handsfree On* ➡ ● ● For *Handsfree On*, specified device reconnects to handset when placing/receiving calls. **For Audio Output** *Audio On* ➡ ● ● For *Audio On*, Media Player audio output is redirected to specified device automatically when ⊗Sound Output is set to *Bluetooth Device*.

■ Sending Files

Sending My Details	● ➡ 0·· ➡ ▣ ➡ *Send My Card* ➡ ● ➡ *Via Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts
Sending non-Phone Book files	In file list, select file ➡ ▣ ➡ *Send* (or *Send/ Blog*) ➡ ● ➡ *Via Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts

Backup

■ Backup & Restore

Backing up all items	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ *Phone/*☒ ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ● ➡ *Backup All Items* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Backup complete ➡ ● ➡ ●
Encoding data for backup	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ *Phone/*☒ ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings/Manage* ➡ ● ➡ *Encode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Available for Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks and Messaging folders.
Restoring all items	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ *Phone/*☒ ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ● ➡ *Restore All Items* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Restore complete ➡ ● ➡ ●

■ Backup Files

Deleting backup files	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ *Phone/*☒ ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings/Manage* ➡ ● ➡ *File Management* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ☒ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

S! Addressbook Back-up

Opening log	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Addressbook Back-up* ➡ ● ➡ *Details* ➡ ● ➡ *Sync Log* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ●
Deleting log records	Start Here ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Addressbook Back-up* ➡ ● ➡ *Details* ➡ ● ➡ *Sync Log* ➡ ● ➡ See below **One Record** Select record ➡ ☒ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **All Records** ☒ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

File Transfer

? Some files are not received

- If storage limit is reached during transfers, remaining files will not be received.

? Cannot receive/accept connection requests even when Infrared/Bluetooth® is *On*

- Handset may not be in Standby.
- Keypad Lock/Function Lock may be active.
- Software Update may be in progress.

? Phone Book settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
  - Category, Tone, Vibration, Secret
- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; reassign it.

? Calendar/Tasks settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
  - Alarm tone/video, Secret, S! Friend's Status

? Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

? Messages are not saved properly on handset

- Messages may not be received depending on the size.
- Messages received via One File Transfer are saved to Data Folder (Other Documents) and cannot be used as messages.
- In All File Transfers, overwriting existing messages deletes sort keys.

? Messages are not saved properly on recipient devices

- Mail Notices are saved as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- When sending messages to other handset models via All File Transfer, Spam Folder messages may be saved to the incoming message folder.
- When sending messages in Drafts to other handset models via All File Transfer, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

? Cannot find files in DCIM folder

- Received files in DCIM folder are saved to Pictures folder.

Infrared

? Infrared transfer fails

- Infrared Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.; clean with soft cloth.
- Transfers may fail in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment.

Backup & Restore

Backup fails

● Check handset/Memory Card memory; backup may fail if the memory is low.

Some files are not restored

● If storage limit is reached during Restore, remaining files will not be restored.

Cannot use backup files on other SoftBank handsets or PCs

● Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

Cannot open backup files

● Some backup files may open only after being restored to handset.

Phone Book settings are lost

● Picture setting may be lost depending on image; reassign it.
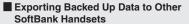
Messages are not saved properly

● Transfer may delete sort keys.
● Mail Notices are restored as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

Bookmarks are not saved properly

● Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are all backed up as a single file.
● Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

■ Exporting Backed Up Data to Other SoftBank Handsets

Messages are not saved properly

● If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)
● When restoring draft messages, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

■ Importing Data Backed Up on Other SoftBank Handsets

Messages are not saved properly

● Messages may not be restored depending on the size.

Connectivity & File Backup

13

13-21

14
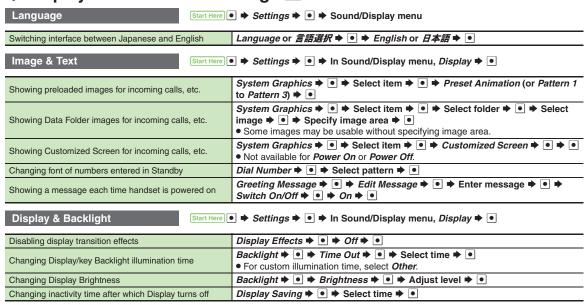
Handset Customization

♪ Date & Time Settings

Date & Time	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Date & Time* ➡ ●
Setting the date and time	*Set Date/Time* ➡ ● ➡ Enter the year ➡ Enter the month ➡ Enter the day ➡ Enter the time ➡ ●
Correcting Clock manually	*Time Correction* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Disabling auto Clock correction	*Time Correction* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Corr. Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Setting auto Clock correction timing	*Time Correction* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Corr. Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ⊟ ➡ Select item ➡ ● (☐/✓) ➡ ⊵ ➡ ⬛
Activating Daylight Saving	*Daylight Saving* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Auto World Clock is disabled when Daylight Saving is set to *On*.
Changing Time Zone	*Set Time Zone* ➡ ● ➡ ⬥ Select area ➡ ● ● Auto World Clock is disabled when Set Time Zone is set to a city other than *Tokyo*.
Adding custom Time Zone	*Set Time Zone* ➡ ● ➡ ⊟ ➡ Enter city name ➡ ● ➡ ⬦ + or - ➡ ⬥ ➡ Enter time difference ➡ ● ● Auto World Clock is disabled when custom Time Zone is in use.
Changing time format to 12 hour	*Time Format* ➡ ● ➡ *12 Hour* ➡ ●
Changing date format	*Date Format* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Starting the Calendar week on Monday	*Calendar Format* ➡ ● ➡ *Monday-Sunday* ➡ ●

✗ **Display & Illumination Settings** ▯1

Language	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Sound/Display menu
Switching interface between Japanese and English	*Language* or *言語選択* ➡ ● ➡ *English* or *日本語* ➡ ●

Image & Text	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ●
Showing preloaded images for incoming calls, etc.	*System Graphics* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Preset Animation* (or *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 3*) ➡ ●
Showing Data Folder images for incoming calls, etc.	*System Graphics* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ● ➡ Specify image area ➡ ● ● Some images may be usable without specifying image area.
Showing Customized Screen for incoming calls, etc.	*System Graphics* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ ● ● Not available for *Power On* or *Power Off*.
Changing font of numbers entered in Standby	*Dial Number* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ●
Showing a message each time handset is powered on	*Greeting Message* ➡ ● ➡ *Edit Message* ➡ ● ➡ Enter message ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

Display & Backlight	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ●
Disabling display transition effects	*Display Effects* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Changing Display/key Backlight illumination time	*Backlight* ➡ ● ➡ *Time Out* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ● For custom illumination time, select *Other*.
Changing Display Brightness	*Backlight* ➡ ● ➡ *Brightness* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●
Changing inactivity time after which Display turns off	*Display Saving* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●

✗ **Display & Illumination Settings 2**

Sub Display Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Sub-Display* ➡ ●

Changing inactivity time after which Sub Display turns off	*Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●
Hiding new received messages	*Messages* ➡ ● ➡ *Not Display* ➡ ●
Changing Clock view	*Display Date&Time* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●
Changing Clock font	*Clock Type* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ●
Hiding caller info	*Caller Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Standby Display Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Standby Display* ➡ ●

Changing Clock/Calendar	*Clock/Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●
Selecting Mobile Widget display option	*Show Widget* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Showing Network service provider name in Standby	*Show Operator Name* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

Key Backlight Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊡ *Phone/*☒

Disabling key Backlight illumination	*Set Key Light* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

⚡ **Incoming Transmission Settings**

Handset Response　　Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ ●

Changing ringtone volume	*Volume* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●
Answering calls with other keys	*Any Key Answer* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Use 0 - 9, ✻, #, (♯■♭), 🔲, 🄫 or 🔳 in addition to 🔲.
Muting ringer with other keys	*Any Key Answer* ➡ ● ➡ *Only Mute* ➡ ● ● Use 0 - 9, ✻, #, (♯■♭), 🔲, 🄫 or 🔳 in addition to 🔲.

Handset Response (Lights)　　Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ ●

Selecting illumination option	*Event Light* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *On* or *Off* ➡ ●
Enabling/disabling illumination for missed transmissions	*Status Light* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *On* or *Off* ➡ ●

🎵 Sound Settings

System Sounds	Start Here ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ In Sound/Display menu, *Sounds & Alerts* ➜ ●
Enabling Keypad Tones	*System Sounds* ➜ ● ➜ *Keypad Tones* ➜ ● ➜ Select tone ➜ ●
Changing S! Circle Talk tone	*System Sounds* ➜ ● ➜ *S! Circle Talk* ➜ ● ➜ Select tone ➜ ●
Changing other System Sounds	*System Sounds* ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ● ➜ *Tone* or *Sound* ➜ ● ➜ Select folder ➜ ● ➜ Select tone/file ➜ ● • For files with limited usage period, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Disabling System Sounds	*System Sounds* ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ● ➜ *Tone* or *Sound* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ● • Not available for *S! Circle Talk*. • For *Keypad Tones*, omit *Tone* or *Sound* selection step.
Changing System Sound duration	*System Sounds* ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ● ➜ *Duration* ➜ ● ➜ Select/enter time ➜ ● • Not available for *Keypad Tones* or *S! Circle Talk*.
Changing System Sound volume	*Volume* ➜ ● ➜ *General Volume* ➜ ● ➜ Adjust level ➜ ●

Additional Sound Settings	Start Here ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ Sound/Display menu
Disabling Speaker when using Headphones	*Ringer Output* ➜ ● ➜ *Earphone* ➜ ●
Activating Speaker surround	*Sounds & Alerts* ➜ ● ➜ *Surround* ➜ ● ➜ *On* ➜ ●

⚒ **Connectivity Settings** 🄵

Network	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ 🔄 *Network*
Selecting a Network manually	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ●
Adding preferred Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Preferred* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ● ➡ *Insert* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ●
Adding preferred Networks to the end	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Preferred* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Add to End* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ●
Deleting preferred Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Preferred* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ● ➡ *Delete* ➡ ●
Adding Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Add* ➡ ● ➡ Enter country code ➡ ● ➡ Enter Network code ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Select NW Type* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ● ● After selecting *Add New Network* and pressing ●, Network list appears if Network has already been added. To add more, press ● again and proceed.
Editing Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Network* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ● ➡ *Change* ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as adding Networks ➡ ●
Deleting Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Network* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ● ➡ *Delete* ➡ ●
Refreshing Network connection	*Re-search Signal* ➡ ●
Retrieving Network Information	*Retrieve NW Info* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ●
Checking Network status	*Network Info* ➡ ●
Editing connection names for mobile data communication	*External Device* ➡ ● ➡ Select name ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
Clearing connection names for mobile data communication	*External Device* ➡ ● ➡ 🔄 ➡ *Reset* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Connectivity Settings 2

IP Service	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ▨ *Phone/🐾* ➡ *Locks* ➡ ●
Enabling IP Service	*IP Service Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Enable IP Service to use S! Friend's Status and S! Circle Talk.

Location Information	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ▨ *Network* ➡ *Location Info* ➡ ●
Adding/editing Location Information destination URLs	*URL Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* (or select URL) ➡ ▤ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Enter URL ➡ ● ● Default URL is not editable.
Specifying Location Information destination URL	*URL Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select URL ➡ ●
Viewing Location Information destination URL	*URL Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select URL ➡ ▤ ➡ *Display* ➡ ●
Deleting Location Information destination URLs	*URL Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select URL ➡ ▤ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Hiding Location Information	*Datum On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Changing Location Information confirmation option	*Location Property* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Suppressing Information window after sending Location Information automatically	*Notif. Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Do not Show* ➡ ●
Opening sent Location Information records	*Offer Loc. Logs* ➡ ●

⚙ **Reset Settings**

Restoring Default Settings	Start Here ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⊡ *Phone/🗔* ➜ *Master Reset* ➜ ●

Restoring default handset settings	*Reset Settings* ➜ ● ➜ Enter Administrator Code ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ● Some default settings may not be restored.
Clearing all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.	*Reset All* ➜ ● ➜ Enter Administrator Code ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ● Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Reset All deletes all downloaded S! Applications. ● Handset Code and Administrator Code return to the default settings.

● A confirmation may appear before entering Administrator Code; end the current function to proceed.
● When Double Number is active, regardless of usage mode setting, Reset Settings restores all default settings (Double Number is canceled), and Reset All clears all user files.
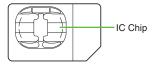
15

Appendix

Q

About USIM Card

USIM Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset. Save Phone Book entries on USIM Card Phone Book to use them on other SoftBank handsets. Depending on the USIM Card in use, some entry items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

Precautions

IC Chip

- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result. Clean with soft dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.

Important
- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank Mobile.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank Mobile upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-39**).

USIM PIN

Four- to eight-digit code (*9999* by default); activate PIN Entry to restrict handset use.

PIN Lock
- Entering incorrect PIN three consecutive times activates PIN Lock, limiting handset use.

Canceling PIN Lock
- Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-39**) for your Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code) and follow these steps:
  Enter PUK Code ➡ ● ➡ Enter new PIN ➡ ● ➡ Re-enter new PIN ➡ ●
  - Write down PUK code.

PUK Lock
- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times activates PUK Lock, disabling handset. For recovery, USIM Card must be reissued at a SoftBank Shop (fees apply).
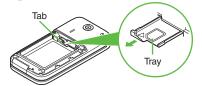
USIM Card Installation

● Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
● USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

Inserting

1 **Remove battery (P.15-4)**

2 **Using Tab, pull out Tray**

Tab

Tray

3 **Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing up**

Notch

4 **Push in Tray fully**
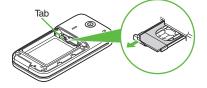
● Reinstall battery (**P.15-4**).

Removing

1 **Remove battery**

2 **Using Tab, pull out Tray**

Tab

3 **Lift and slide out USIM Card as shown**

● Reinstall battery.
● Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

After Repairs, USIM Card Replacement or Handset Upgrade/Replacement

● Some downloaded files may be inaccessible. In addition, S! Applications and BookSurfing® may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.

Battery Installation

About Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable or affect files/settings.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Lithium-ion Battery

- This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.
  - To recycle a used **Li-ion00** lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown above.
  - To avoid fire or electric shock, do not short-circuit or disassemble battery.

Inserting & Removing

1 **Remove Battery Cover**

Battery Cover

- Press and slide as shown.

2 **Insert battery**

- With logo side up, align battery terminals with contact pins.

3 **Close Battery Cover**

- Position and slide Cover gently as shown until it stops.

Removing

- Power off and lift battery as shown.

Software Update

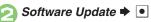Check for firmware updates and download as required.

Precautions
- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Update failure may disable handset. To reduce failure risk, make sure signal is strong and stable, and charge battery beforehand.
- Update will not start if another function is in use. Before updating software (or before scheduled update time), end all active functions/applications.
- Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.
- Always back up important information. SoftBank Mobile cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.

Updating Software

Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/📇* ➡ *Software Update* ➡ ●

2 *Software Update* ➡ ●

Software Update
Update software in a place where signal conditions are strong/stable. All incoming and outgoing signals will be disabled for the duration of this update. Continue?

3 ⊠
- Follow onscreen instructions.

Update Result
In 2, *Update Result* ➡ ●

Scheduled Update (Japanese)

SoftBank Mobile sends update notice via SMS; read and change preset update schedule as needed. A confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press ● or wait a while for update to start.

When Updated

Update success notification appears and handset reboots.
After reboot, completion message appears and Information window opens.

Update Result
While Information window appears, *Update Result* ➡ ●
Reboot Failure
- If handset does not return to Standby after update, power off, reinsert battery, then restart it. If it still does not restart, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.15-39**).

Troubleshooting

■ General

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't power on	Was 🔆 pressed long enough?	Press 🔆 longer.
	Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	Charge battery or install a charged battery.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (**P.15-4**).
Operation is restricted after power on	Is Switch On/Off in PIN Entry *On*?	If *On*, PIN is required. Enter PIN according to onscreen prompt.
Insert USIM Card **appears**	USIM Card may not be properly inserted.	Power off and check that USIM Card is properly inserted, then restart handset. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged.
	The correct USIM Card may not be inserted.	Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid.
	There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.	Clean relevant parts with dry cloth and re-insert.
REFRESH **appears and handset returns to Standby**	Handset may have been dropped or subjected to shocks.	Handset failed to recognize USIM Card temporarily. This is not a malfunction.
Operation is restricted	Keypad Lock may be active.	Cancel Keypad Lock (**P.1-24**).
	Function Lock may be active.	Cancel Function Lock (**P.11-2**).

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery strength indicator flashes when not charging	Ambient temperature may be outside 5°C to 35°C.	Use within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C.
Saved entry/folder does not appear on handset	Entry/folder may be set to Secret.	Activate Show Secret Data (**P.11-3**).
Handset/AC Charger feels warm	Handset/AC Charger may warm while charging.	Unless handset/AC Charger is too hot to touch, warmth is considered normal. Always avoid prolonged skin contact to prevent burn injuries.
	Handset may warm during extended periods of use.	
	Handset may warm during Video Calls.	
Cannot access Memory Card files	Memory Card may not be properly formatted.	Use 001SH-formatted Memory Cards.
Clock settings are lost	Did you leave handset without battery?	Clock settings remain even when removing battery for replacement, etc. However, if handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one for an extended period of time (approximately one hour), Clock will need to be reset.

■ Charger/Battery

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery charges quickly	Remaining charge shortens charging time.	This is normal.
	Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. (Small Light flashes red.)	Replace battery with a new one.
Battery charges slowly	Charging slows during Video Calls.	End the call to charge faster.
	Battery may be charging via USB.	Use AC Charger.
Battery won't charge	AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset.	Make sure connector is securely inserted and retry.
	AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet.	Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and retry.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (**P.15-4**).
	Battery, AC Charger, or Charging Terminals, or Device Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.	Clean terminals, connector and Port with a dry cotton swab and retry.
	Charger, etc. may not be supported.	Use specified AC Charger, etc. only; others may damage battery.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery Time seems shorter than usual	High power consuming operations are in use.	Keep handset closed in Standby; reduce S! Application, Media Player and camera use, and limit transmissions/external connections.
	Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time.	Avoid prolonged use of handset out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
	Power hungry settings may be active.	Lower Brightness, select shorter Display Saving/Backlight time, etc.

Appendix

15

Text Entry Key Assignments

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
1	あいうえお / ぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオ / ァィゥェォ	@./_-1 ␣ (space)	1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	7	7
8	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	TUVtuv8	8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
0	わをんー	ワヲンー	0	0	0
✳	゛゜	゛゜_[1]		✳ + P (pause) ? -[2]	
	Log, Pictogram List (double-byte), Symbol List[3]				
#	、。 ↵ (line break) ？！ ␣ (space)	，．↵ (line break) ?! ␣ (space)	#		

[1] - is available only in Single-byte Katakana mode.
[2] Available for phone number entry; some characters may not be enterable in some windows.
[3] May not be enterable in some windows.

Appendix 15

15-8

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
[key]	Conversion[4]	Cursor up/down; ↵ (line break) when [key] is pressed at the end of text			
[key]	Cursor left/right				
[key]	Switch entry modes (except during conversion)				
	Search Word[5]				
[key] (Long)	Toggle Personal Mode[5]	———————	Toggle Personal Mode[5,6]	———————	
[key]	Toggle case (for some characters)				
	———————		Toggle mode (upper/lower and lower case)	———————	
[key]	Delete one character				
	Cancel conversion	———————	Cancel conversion[6]	———————	Delete code
[key] (Long)	Delete before or on and after cursor				
[key]	Recover characters deleted with [key]				
	Re-convert[7]	———————	Re-convert[6, 7]	———————	
[key]	Confirm/Done				
[key]	Non-Predictive suggestions[5]				
[key]	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion[5]	———————			

[4] Cursor moves up/down except during conversion.
[5] Available during conversion.
[6] Available only in Single-byte Alphanumerics mode.
[7] Press [key] immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them.

Appendix

15

15-9

Pager Code List

Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press ⬚ to switch immediately after character entry.

■ Double-byte Upper Case

First Digit (Press First)	\ Second Digit (Press Next) → 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	ー	／
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		☎	*1
8	や	（	ゆ	）	よ	￥	#	Space	💗	*2
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
0	わ	を	ん	゛	゜	6	7	8	9	0

■ Single-byte Upper Case

First Digit (Press First)	\ Second Digit (Press Next) → 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ｱ	ｲ	ｳ	ｴ	ｵ	A	B	C	D	E
2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F	G	H	I	J
3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K	L	M	N	O
4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P	Q	R	S	T
5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U	V	W	X	Y
6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z	?	!	-	/
7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&		☎	*1
8	ﾔ	（	ﾕ	）	ﾖ	￥	#	Space	💗	*2
9	ﾗ	ﾘ	ﾙ	ﾚ	ﾛ	1	2	3	4	5
0	ﾜ	ｦ	ﾝ	ﾞ	ﾟ	6	7	8	9	0

■ Double-byte Lower Case

First Digit (Press First)	\ Second Digit (Press Next) → 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ぁ	ぃ	ぅ	ぇ	ぉ	a	b	c	d	e
2						f	g	h	i	j
3						k	l	m	n	o
4			っ			p	q	r	s	t
5						u	v	w	x	y
6						z				
7										*1
8	ゃ		ゅ		ょ					*2
9										
0				、	。					

■ Single-byte Lower Case

First Digit (Press First)	\ Second Digit (Press Next) → 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ｧ	ｨ	ｩ	ｪ	ｫ	a	b	c	d	e
2						f	g	h	i	j
3						k	l	m	n	o
4			ｯ			p	q	r	s	t
5						u	v	w	x	y
6						z				
7										*1
8	ｬ		ｭ		ｮ					*2
9										
0				､	｡					

*1 Press 7 0 to insert ↵ (line break) in mail message text, Notepad, etc.
*2 Press 8 0 to toggle upper and lower case modes.

Character Code List

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010		Space	、	。	，	．	・	：	；	？
011	！	゛	゜	´	｀	¨	＾	￣	＿	ヽ
012	ヾ	ゝ	ゞ	〃	仝	々	〆	〇	ー	―
013	‐	／	＼	～	∥	｜	…	‥	'	'
014	"	"	（	）	〔	〕	［	］	｛	｝
015	〈	〉	《	》	「	」	『	』	【	】
016	＋	－	±	×	÷	＝	≠	＜	＞	≦
017	≧	∞	∴	♂	♀	°	′	″	℃	￥
018	＄	¢	£	％	＃	＆	＊	＠	§	☆
019	★	○	●	◎	◇					
020	◆	□	■	△	▲	▽	▼	※	〒	
021	→	←	↑	↓	〓					
022						∈	∋	⊆	⊇	
023	⊂	⊃	∪	∩						
024			∧	∨	￢	⇒	⇔	∀	∃	
026			∠	⊥	⌒	∂	∇	≡	≒	≪
027	≫	√	∽	∝	∵	∫	∬			
028					Å	‰	♯	♭	♪	†
029	‡	¶					◯			
031								0	1	2
032	3	4	5	6	7	8	9			
033				A	B	C	D	E	F	G
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	
036							a	b	c	d
037	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
038	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x
039	y	z								
040		ぁ	あ	ぃ	い	ぅ	う	ぇ	え	ぉ
041	お	か	が	き	ぎ	く	ぐ	け	げ	こ
042	ご	さ	ざ	し	じ	す	ず	せ	ぜ	そ

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
043	ぞ	た	だ	ち	ぢ	っ	つ	づ	て	で
044	と	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	は	ば	ぱ
045	ひ	び	ぴ	ふ	ぶ	ぷ	へ	べ	ぺ	ほ
046	ぼ	ぽ	ま	み	む	め	も	ゃ	や	ゅ
047	ゆ	ょ	よ	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	ゎ	わ
048	ゐ	ゑ	を	ん						
050		ァ	ア	ィ	イ	ゥ	ウ	ェ	エ	ォ
051	オ	カ	ガ	キ	ギ	ク	グ	ケ	ゲ	コ
052	ゴ	サ	ザ	シ	ジ	ス	ズ	セ	ゼ	ソ
053	ゾ	タ	ダ	チ	ヂ	ッ	ツ	ヅ	テ	デ
054	ト	ド	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	ハ	バ	パ
055	ヒ	ビ	ピ	フ	ブ	プ	ヘ	ベ	ペ	ホ
056	ボ	ポ	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	ャ	ヤ	ュ
057	ユ	ョ	ヨ	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	ヮ	ワ
058	ヰ	ヱ	ヲ	ン	ヴ	ヵ	ヶ			
060		A	B	Γ	Δ	E	Z	H	Θ	I
061	K	Λ	M	N	Ξ	O	Π	P	Σ	T
062	Υ	Φ	X	Ψ	Ω					
063				α	β	γ	δ	ε	ζ	η
064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ
065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω			
070		А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	Ж	З
071	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С
072	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
073	Ь	Э	Ю	Я						
074										а
075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й
076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у
077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э
078	ю	я								

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
080		─	│	┌	┐	┘	└	├	┬	┤
081	┴	┼	━	┃	┏	┓	┛	┗	┣	┳
082	┫	┻	╋	┠	┯	┨	┷	┿	┝	┰
083	┥	┸	╂							
130		①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨
131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲
132	⑳	Ⅰ	Ⅱ	Ⅲ	Ⅳ	Ⅴ	Ⅵ	Ⅶ	Ⅷ	Ⅸ
133	Ⅹ	㍉	㌔	㌢	㍍	㌘	㌧	㌃	㌶	㍑
134	㍗	㌍	㌦	㌣	㌫	㍊	㌻	㎜	㎝	
135	㎞	㎎	㎏	㏄	㎡					
136			㍻	〝	〟	№	㏍	℡	㊤	
137	㊥	㊦	㊧	㊨	㈱	㈲	㈹	㍾	㍽	㍼
138	≒	≡	∫	∮	∑	√	⊥	∠	∟	⊿
139	∵	∩	∪							
160							───あ───			
160							亜	唖	娃	阿	哀	愛	挨	姶	逢
161	葵	茜	穐	悪	握	渥	旭	葦	芦	鯵
162	梓	圧	斡	扱	宛	姐	虻	飴	絢	綾
163	鮎	或	粟	袷	安	庵	按	暗	案	闇
164	鞍	杏				───い───				
164			以	伊	位	依	偉	囲	夷	委
165	威	尉	惟	意	慰	易	椅	為	畏	異
166	移	維	緯	胃	萎	衣	謂	違	遺	医
167	井	亥	域	育	郁	磯	一	壱	溢	逸
168	稲	茨	芋	鰯	允	印	咽	員	因	姻
169	引	飲	淫	胤	蔭					
170		院	陰	隠	韻	吋	───う───			
170								右	宇	烏	羽

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
171	迂	雨	卯	鵜	窺	丑	碓	臼	渦	嘘
172	唄	欝	蔚	鰻	姥	厩	浦	瓜	閏	噂
173	云	運	雲				───え───			
173				荏	餌	叡	営	嬰	影	映
174	曳	栄	永	泳	洩	瑛	盈	穎	頴	英
175	衛	詠	鋭	液	疫	益	駅	悦	謁	越
176	閲	榎	厭	円	園	堰	奄	宴	延	怨
177	掩	援	沿	演	炎	焔	煙	燕	猿	縁
178	艶	苑	薗	遠	鉛	鴛	塩		───お───	
178								於	汚	甥
179	凹	央	奥	往	応					
180		押	旺	横	欧	殴	王	翁	襖	鴬
181	鴎	黄	岡	沖	荻	億	屋	憶	臆	桶
182	牡	乙	俺	卸	恩	温	穏	音	───か───	
182									下	化
183	仮	何	伽	価	佳	加	可	嘉	夏	嫁
184	家	寡	科	暇	果	架	歌	河	火	珂
185	禍	禾	稼	箇	花	苛	菓	莞	華	菓
186	蝦	課	嘩	貨	迦	過	霞	蚊	俄	峨
187	我	牙	画	臥	芽	蛾	賀	雅	餓	駕
188	介	会	解	回	塊	壊	廻	快	怪	悔
189	恢	懐	戒	拐	改					
190		魁	晦	械	海	灰	界	皆	絵	芥
191	蟹	開	階	貝	凱	劾	外	咳	害	崖
192	慨	概	涯	碍	蓋	街	該	鎧	骸	浬
193	馨	蛙	垣	柿	蛎	鈎	劃	嚇	各	廓
194	拡	撹	格	核	殻	獲	確	穫	覚	角
195	赫	較	郭	閣	隔	革	学	岳	楽	額
196	顎	掛	笠	樫	橿	梶	鰍	潟	割	喝
197	恰	括	活	渇	滑	葛	褐	轄	且	鰹

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
198	叶	椛	樺	鞄	株	兜	竃	蒲	釜	鎌
199	噛	鴨	栢	茅	萱					
200	粥	刈	苅	瓦	乾	侃	冠	寒	刊	
201	勘	勧	巻	喚	堪	姦	完	官	寛	干
202	幹	患	感	慣	憾	換	敢	柑	桓	棺
203	款	歓	汗	漢	澗	潅	環	甘	監	看
204	竿	管	簡	緩	缶	翰	肝	艦	莞	観
205	諌	貫	還	鑑	間	閑	関	陥	韓	館
206	舘	丸	含	岸	巌	玩	癌	眼	岩	翫
207	贋	雁	頑	顔	願					

─── き ───

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
207						企	伎	危	喜	器
208	基	奇	嬉	寄	岐	希	幾	忌	揮	机
209	旗	既	期	棋	棄					
210		機	帰	毅	気	汽	畿	祈	季	稀
211	紀	徽	規	記	貴	起	軌	輝	飢	騎
212	鬼	亀	偽	儀	妓	宜	戯	技	擬	欺
213	犠	疑	祇	義	蟻	誼	議	掬	菊	鞠
214	吉	吃	喫	桔	橘	詰	砧	杵	黍	却
215	客	脚	虐	逆	丘	久	仇	休	及	吸
216	宮	弓	急	救	朽	求	汲	泣	灸	球
217	究	窮	笈	級	糾	給	旧	牛	去	居
218	巨	拒	拠	挙	渠	虚	許	距	鋸	漁
219	禦	魚	亨	享	京					
220		供	侠	僑	兇	競	共	凶	協	匡
221	卿	叫	喬	境	峡	強	彊	怯	恐	恭
222	挟	教	橋	況	狂	狭	矯	胸	脅	興
223	蕎	郷	鏡	響	饗	驚	仰	凝	尭	暁
224	業	局	曲	極	玉	桐	粁	僅	勤	均
225	巾	錦	斤	欣	欽	琴	禁	禽	筋	緊
226	芹	菌	衿	襟	謹	近	金	吟	銀	

─── く ───

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
226										九
227	倶	句	区	狗	玖	矩	苦	躯	駆	駈
228	駒	具	愚	虞	喰	空	偶	寓	遇	隅
229	串	櫛	釧	屑	屈					

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
230			掘	窟	沓	靴	轡	窪	熊	隈
231	粂	栗	繰	桑	鍬	勲	君	薫	訓	群
232	軍	郡								

─── け ───

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
232			卦	袈	祁	係	傾	刑	兄	啓
233	圭	珪	型	契	形	径	恵	慶	慧	憩
234	掲	携	敬	景	桂	渓	畦	稽	系	経
235	継	繋	罫	茎	荊	蛍	計	詣	警	軽
236	頚	鶏	芸	迎	鯨	劇	戟	撃	激	隙
237	桁	傑	欠	決	潔	穴	結	血	訣	月
238	件	倹	倦	健	兼	券	剣	喧	圏	堅
239	嫌	建	憲	懸	拳	捲				
240		検	権	牽	犬	献	研	硯	絹	県
241	肩	見	謙	賢	軒	遣	鍵	険	顕	験
242	鹸	元	原	厳	幻	弦	減	源	玄	現
243	絃	舷	言	諺	限					

─── こ ───

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
243						乎	個	古	呼	固
244	姑	孤	己	庫	弧	戸	故	枯	湖	狐
245	糊	袴	股	胡	菰	虎	誇	跨	鈷	雇
246	顧	鼓	五	互	伍	午	呉	吾	娯	後
247	御	悟	梧	檎	瑚	碁	語	誤	護	醐
248	乞	鯉	交	佼	侯	候	倖	光	公	功
249	効	勾	厚	口	向					
250		后	喉	坑	垢	好	孔	孝	宏	工
251	巧	巷	幸	広	庚	康	弘	恒	慌	抗
252	拘	控	攻	昂	晃	更	杭	校	梗	構
253	江	洪	浩	港	溝	甲	皇	硬	稿	糠
254	紅	紘	絞	綱	耕	考	肯	肱	腔	膏
255	航	荒	行	衡	講	貢	購	郊	酵	鉱
256	砿	鋼	閤	降	項	香	高	鴻	剛	劫
257	号	合	壕	拷	濠	豪	轟	麹	克	刻
258	告	国	穀	酷	鵠	黒	獄	漉	腰	甑
259	忽	惚	骨	狛	込					
260		此	頃	今	困	坤	墾	婚	恨	懇
261	昏	昆	根	梱	混	痕	紺	艮	魂	

─── さ ───

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
261										些
262	佐	叉	唆	嵯	左	差	査	沙	瑳	砂
263	詐	鎖	裟	坐	座	挫	債	催	再	最
264	哉	塞	妻	宰	彩	才	採	栽	歳	済
265	災	采	犀	砕	砦	祭	斎	細	菜	裁
266	載	際	剤	在	材	罪	財	冴	坂	阪
267	堺	榊	肴	咲	崎	埼	碕	鷺	作	削
268	咋	搾	昨	朔	柵	窄	策	索	錯	桜
269	鮭	笹	匙	冊	刷					
270		察	拶	撮	擦	札	殺	薩	雑	皐
271	鯖	捌	錆	鮫	皿	晒	三	傘	参	山
272	惨	撒	散	桟	燦	珊	産	算	纂	蚕
273	讃	賛	酸	餐	斬	暫	残			

─── し ───

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
273								仕	仔	伺
274	使	刺	司	史	嗣	四	士	始	姉	姿
275	子	屍	市	師	志	思	指	支	孜	斯
276	施	旨	枝	止	死	氏	獅	祉	私	糸
277	紙	紫	肢	脂	至	視	詞	詩	試	誌
278	諮	資	賜	雌	飼	歯	事	似	侍	児
279	字	寺	慈	持	時					
280		次	滋	治	爾	璽	痔	磁	示	而
281	耳	自	蒔	辞	汐	鹿	式	識	鴫	竺
282	軸	宍	雫	七	叱	執	失	嫉	室	悉
283	湿	漆	疾	質	実	蔀	篠	偲	柴	芝
284	屡	蕊	縞	舎	写	射	捨	赦	斜	煮
285	社	紗	者	謝	車	遮	蛇	邪	借	勺
286	尺	杓	灼	爵	酌	釈	錫	若	寂	弱
287	惹	主	取	守	手	朱	殊	狩	珠	種
288	腫	趣	酒	首	儒	受	呪	寿	授	樹
289	綬	需	囚	収	周					
290		宗	就	州	修	愁	拾	洲	秀	秋
291	終	繍	習	臭	舟	蒐	衆	襲	讐	蹴
292	輯	週	酋	酬	集	醜	什	住	充	十
293	従	戎	柔	汁	渋	獣	縦	重	銃	叔

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
294	夙	宿	淑	祝	縮	粛	塾	熟	出	術
295	述	俊	峻	春	瞬	竣	舜	駿	准	循
296	旬	楯	殉	淳	準	潤	盾	純	巡	遵
297	醇	順	処	初	所	暑	曙	渚	庶	緒
298	署	書	薯	藷	諸	助	叙	女	序	徐
299	恕	鋤	除	傷	償					
300		勝	匠	升	召	哨	商	唱	嘗	奨
301	妾	娼	宵	将	小	少	尚	庄	床	廠
302	彰	承	抄	招	掌	捷	昇	昌	昭	晶
303	松	梢	樟	樵	沼	消	渉	湘	焼	焦
304	照	症	省	硝	礁	祥	称	章	笑	粧
305	紹	肖	菖	蒋	蕉	衝	裳	訟	証	詔
306	詳	象	賞	醤	鉦	鍾	鐘	障	鞘	上
307	丈	丞	乗	冗	剰	城	場	壌	嬢	常
308	情	擾	条	杖	浄	状	畳	穣	蒸	譲
309	醸	錠	嘱	埴	飾					
310		拭	植	殖	燭	織	職	色	触	食
311	蝕	辱	尻	伸	信	侵	唇	娠	寝	審
312	心	慎	振	新	晋	森	榛	浸	深	申
313	疹	真	神	秦	紳	臣	芯	薪	親	診
314	身	辛	進	針	震	人	仁	刃	塵	壬
315	尋	甚	尽	腎	訊	迅	陣	靭		

─── す ───

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
315									笥	諏
316	須	酢	図	厨	逗	吹	垂	帥	推	水
317	炊	睡	粋	翠	衰	遂	酔	錐	錘	随
318	瑞	髄	崇	嵩	数	枢	趨	雛	据	杉
319	椙	菅	頗	雀	裾					
320		澄	摺	寸						

─── せ ───

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
320					世	瀬	畝	是	凄	制
321	勢	姓	征	性	成	政	整	星	晴	棲
322	栖	正	清	牲	生	盛	精	聖	声	製
323	西	誠	誓	請	逝	醒	青	静	斉	税
324	脆	隻	席	惜	戚	斥	昔	析	石	積
325	籍	績	脊	責	赤	跡	蹟	碩	切	拙

Character Codes

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
326	接	摂	折	設	窃	節	説	雪	絶	舌
327	蝉	仙	先	千	占	宣	専	尖	川	戦
328	扇	撰	栓	栴	泉	浅	洗	染	潜	煎
329	煽	旋	穿	箭	線					
330			繊	羨	腺	舛	船	薦	詮	賎	践
331	選	遷	銭	銑	閃	鮮	前	善	漸	然
332	全	禅	繕	膳	糎					

——そ——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
332						噌	塑	岨	措	曾
333	曽	楚	狙	疏	疎	礎	祖	租	粗	素
334	組	蘇	訴	阻	遡	鼠	僧	創	双	叢
335	倉	喪	壮	奏	爽	宋	層	匝	惣	想
336	捜	掃	挿	掻	操	早	曹	巣	槍	槽
337	漕	燥	争	痩	相	窓	糟	総	綜	聡
338	草	荘	葬	蒼	藻	装	走	送	遭	鎗
339	霜	騒	像	増	憎					
340		臓	蔵	贈	造	促	側	則	即	息
341	捉	束	測	足	速	俗	属	賊	族	続
342	卒	袖	其	揃	存	孫	尊	損	村	遜

——た——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
343	他	多	太	汰	詑	唾	堕	妥	惰	打
344	柁	舵	楕	陀	駄	騨	体	堆	対	耐
345	岱	帯	待	怠	態	戴	替	泰	滞	胎
346	腿	苔	袋	貸	退	逮	隊	黛	鯛	代
347	台	大	第	醍	題	鷹	滝	瀧	卓	啄
348	宅	托	択	拓	沢	濯	琢	託	鐸	濁
349	諾	茸	凧	蛸	只					
350		叩	但	達	辰	奪	脱	巽	竪	辿
351	棚	谷	狸	鱈	樽	誰	丹	単	嘆	坦
352	担	探	旦	歎	淡	湛	炭	短	端	箪
353	綻	耽	胆	蛋	誕	鍛	団	弾	断	
354	暖	檀	段	男	談					

——ち——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
354						値	知	地	弛	恥
355	智	池	痴	稚	置	致	蜘	遅	馳	築
356	畜	竹	筑	蓄	逐	秩	窒	茶	嫡	着

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
357	中	仲	宙	忠	抽	昼	柱	注	虫	衷
358	註	酎	鋳	駐	樗	瀦	猪	苧	著	貯
359	丁	兆	凋	喋	寵					
360		帖	帳	庁	弔	張	彫	徴	懲	挑
361	暢	朝	潮	牒	町	眺	聴	脹	腸	蝶
362	調	諜	超	跳	銚	長	頂	鳥	勅	捗
363	直	朕	沈	珍	賃	鎮	陳			

——つ——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
363								津	墜	椎
364	槌	追	鎚	痛	通	塚	栂	掴	槻	佃
365	漬	柘	辻	蔦	綴	鍔	椿	潰	坪	壷
366	嬬	紬	爪	吊	釣	鶴				

——て——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
366							亭	低	停	偵
367	剃	貞	呈	堤	定	帝	底	庭	廷	弟
368	悌	抵	挺	提	梯	汀	碇	禎	程	締
369	艇	訂	諦	蹄	逓					
370		邸	鄭	釘	鼎	泥	摘	擢	敵	滴
371	的	笛	適	鏑	溺	哲	徹	撤	轍	迭
372	鉄	典	填	天	展	店	添	纏	甜	貼
373	転	顛	点	伝	殿	澱	田	電		

——と——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
373									兎	吐
374	堵	塗	妬	屠	徒	斗	杜	渡	登	菟
375	賭	途	都	鍍	砥	砺	努	度	土	奴
376	怒	倒	党	冬	凍	刀	唐	塔	塘	套
377	宕	島	嶋	悼	投	搭	東	桃	梼	棟
378	盗	淘	湯	涛	灯	燈	当	痘	祷	等
379	答	筒	糖	統	到					
380		董	蕩	藤	討	謄	豆	踏	逃	透
381	鐙	陶	頭	騰	闘	働	動	同	堂	導
382	憧	撞	洞	瞳	童	胴	萄	道	銅	峠
383	鴇	匿	得	徳	涜	特	督	禿	篤	毒
384	独	読	栃	橡	凸	突	椴	届	鳶	苫
385	寅	酉	瀞	噸	屯	惇	敦	沌	豚	遁
386	頓	呑	曇	鈍						

——な——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
386					奈	那	内	乍	凪	薙
387	謎	灘	捺	鍋	楢	馴	縄	畷	南	楠
388	軟	難	汝							

——に——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
388					二	尼	弐	迩	匂	賑	肉
389	虹	廿	日	乳	入					
390	如	尿	韮	任	妊	忍	認			

——ぬ～の——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
390									濡	禰
391	祢	寧	葱	猫	熱	年	念	捻	撚	燃
392	粘	乃	廼	之	埜	嚢	悩	濃	納	能
393	脳	膿	農	覗	蚤					

——は——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
393						巴	把	播	覇	杷
394	波	派	琶	破	婆	罵	芭	馬	俳	廃
395	拝	排	敗	杯	盃	牌	背	肺	輩	配
396	倍	培	媒	梅	楳	煤	狽	買	売	賠
397	陪	這	蝿	秤	矧	萩	伯	剥	博	拍
398	柏	泊	白	箔	粕	舶	薄	迫	曝	漠
399	爆	縛	莫	駁	麦					
400		函	箱	硲	箸	肇	筈	櫨	幡	肌
401	畑	畠	八	鉢	溌	発	醗	髪	伐	罰
402	抜	筏	閥	鳩	噺	塙	蛤	隼	伴	判
403	半	反	叛	帆	搬	斑	板	氾	汎	版
404	犯	班	畔	繁	般	藩	販	範	釆	煩
405	頒	飯	挽	晩	番	盤	磐	蕃	蛮	

——ひ——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
405										匪
406	卑	否	妃	庇	彼	悲	扉	批	披	斐
407	比	泌	疲	皮	碑	秘	緋	罷	肥	被
408	誹	費	避	非	飛	樋	簸	備	尾	微
409	枇	毘	琵	眉	美					
410		鼻	柊	稗	匹	疋	髭	彦	膝	菱
411	肘	弼	必	畢	筆	逼	桧	姫	媛	紐
412	百	謬	俵	彪	標	氷	漂	瓢	票	表

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
413	評	豹	廟	描	病	秒	苗	錨	鋲	蒜
414	蛭	鰭	品	彬	斌	浜	瀕	貧	賓	頻
415	敏	瓶								

——ふ——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
415				不	付	埠	夫	婦	富	冨	布
416	府	怖	扶	敷	斧	普	浮	父	符	腐
417	膚	芙	譜	負	賦	赴	阜	附	侮	撫
418	武	舞	葡	蕪	部	封	楓	風	葺	蕗
419	伏	副	復	幅	服					
420		福	腹	複	覆	淵	弗	払	沸	仏
421	物	鮒	分	吻	噴	墳	憤	扮	焚	奮
422	粉	糞	紛	雰	文	聞				

——へ——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
422							丙	併	兵	塀
423	幣	平	弊	柄	並	蔽	閉	陛	米	頁
424	僻	壁	癖	碧	別	瞥	蔑	箆	偏	変
425	片	篇	編	辺	返	遍	便	勉	娩	弁
426	鞭									

——ほ——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
426				保	舗	鋪	圃	捕	歩	甫	補	輔
427	穂	募	墓	慕	戊	暮	母	簿	菩	倣
428	俸	包	呆	報	奉	宝	峰	峯	崩	庖
429	抱	捧	放	方	朋					
430		法	泡	烹	砲	縫	胞	芳	萌	蓬
431	蜂	褒	訪	豊	邦	鋒	飽	鳳	鵬	乏
432	亡	傍	剖	坊	妨	帽	忘	忙	房	暴
433	望	某	棒	冒	紡	肪	膨	謀	貌	貿
434	鉾	防	吠	頬	北	僕	卜	墨	撲	朴
435	牧	睦	穆	釦	勃	没	殆	堀	幌	奔
436	本	翻	凡	盆						

——ま——

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
436						摩	磨	魔	麻	埋	妹
437	昧	枚	毎	哩	槙	幕	膜	枕	鮪	柾
438	鱒	桝	亦	俣	又	抹	沫	迄	侭	
439	繍	麿	万	慢	満					
440	漫	蔓								

Appendix

15

15-**13**

Last Digit

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
――― み ―――										
440				味	未	魅	巳	箕	岬	密
441	蜜	湊	蓑	稔	脈	妙	粍	民	眠	
――― む ―――										
441										務
442	夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘	
――― め ―――										
442										冥
443	名	命	明	盟	迷	銘	鳴	姪	牝	滅
444	免	棉	綿	緬	面	麺				
――― も ―――										
444							摸	模	茂	妄
445	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	耗	蒙	儲	木	黙
446	目	杢	勿	餅	尤	戻	籾	貰	問	悶
447	紋	門	匁							
――― や ―――										
447				也	冶	夜	爺	耶	野	弥
448	矢	厄	役	約	薬	訳	躍	靖	柳	薮
449	鑓									
――― ゆ ―――										
449							愉	愈	油	癒
450	諭	輸	唯	佑	優	勇	友	宥	幽	
451	悠	憂	揖	有	柚	湧	涌	猶	猷	由
452	祐	裕	誘	遊	邑	郵	雄	融	夕	
――― よ ―――										
452										予
453	余	与	誉	輿	預	傭	幼	妖	容	庸
454	揚	揺	擁	曜	楊	様	洋	溶	熔	用
455	窯	羊	耀	葉	蓉	要	謡	踊	遥	陽
456	養	慾	抑	欲	沃	浴	翌	翼	淀	
――― ら ―――										
456										羅
457	螺	裸	来	莱	頼	雷	洛	絡	落	酪
458	乱	卵	嵐	欄	濫	藍	蘭	覧		
――― り ―――										
458									利	吏

Last Digit

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
459	履	李	梨	理	璃					
460	痢	裏	裡	里	離	陸	律	率	立	
461	葎	掠	略	劉	流	溜	琉	留	硫	粒
462	隆	竜	龍	侶	慮	旅	虜	了	亮	僚
463	両	凌	寮	料	梁	涼	猟	療	瞭	稜
464	糧	良	諒	遼	量	陵	領	力	緑	倫
465	厘	林	淋	燐	琳	臨	輪	隣	鱗	麟
――― る～れ ―――										
466	瑠	塁	涙	累	類	令	伶	例	冷	励
467	嶺	怜	玲	礼	苓	鈴	隷	零	霊	麗
468	齢	暦	歴	列	劣	烈	裂	廉	恋	憐
469	漣	煉	簾	練	聯					
――― ろ ―――										
470	蓮	連	錬							
470					呂	魯	櫓	炉	賂	路
471	露	労	婁	廊	弄	朗	楼	榔	浪	漏
472	牢	狼	篭	老	聾	蝋	郎	六	麓	禄
473	肋	録	論							
――― わ ―――										
473				倭	和	話	歪	賄	脇	惑
474	枠	鷲	亙	亘	鰐	詫	藁	蕨	椀	湾
475	碗	腕								
476										
477										
478										
479										
480										
481										
482										
483										
484										
485										
486										
487										
488										
489										

Last Digit

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
490	僉	僊	傳	僂	僖	僞	僥	僭	僣	僮
491	價	僵	儉	儁	儂	儖	儕	儔	儚	儡
492	儺	儷	儼	儻	儿	兀	兒	兌	兔	兢
493	竸	兩	兪	兮	冀	冂	囘	册	冉	冏
494	冑	冓	冕	冖	冤	冦	冢	冩	冪	冫
495	决	冱	冲	冰	况	冽	凅	凉	凛	几
496	處	凩	凭	凰	凵	凾	刄	刋	刔	刎
497	刧	刪	刮	刳	刹	剏	剄	剋	剌	剞
498	剔	剪	剴	剩	剳	剿	剽	劍	劔	劒
499	剱	劈	劑	辨	辧	劬	劭	劼	劵	勁
500	勍	勗	勞	勣	勦	飭	勠	勳	勵	勸
501	勹	匆	匈	甸	匍	匐	匏	匕	匚	匣
502	匯	匱	匳	匸	區	卆	卅	丗	卉	卍
503	凖	卞	卩	卮	夘	卻	卷	厂	厖	厠
504	厦	厥	厮	厰	厶	參	簒	雙	叟	曼
505	燮	叮	叨	叭	叺	吁	吽	呀	听	吭
506	吼	吮	吶	吩	吝	呎	咏	呵	咎	呟
507	呱	呷	呰	咒	呻	咀	呼	咆	哇	咢
508	咸	咥	咬	哄	哈	咨	咫	哂	咤	咾
509	咼	哘	哥	哦	唏	唔	哽	哮	哭	哺
510	哢	唹	啀	啣	啌	售	啜	啅	啖	啗
511	唸	唳	啝	喙	喀	咯	喊	喟	啻	啾
512	喘	喞	單	啼	喃	喩	喇	喨	嗚	嗅
513	嗟	嗄	嗜	嗤	嗔	嘔	嗷	嘖	嗾	嗽
514	嘛	嗹	噎	噐	營	嘴	嘶	嘲	嘸	噫
515	噤	嘯	噬	噪	嚆	嚀	嚊	嚠	嚔	嚏
516	嚥	嚮	嚶	嚴	囂	嚼	囁	囃	囀	囈
517	囎	囑	囓	囗	囮	囹	圀	囿	圄	圉
518	圈	國	圍	圓	團	圖	嗇	圜	圦	圷
519	圸	坎	圻	址	坏	坩	埀	垈	坡	坿
520	垉	垓	垠	垳	垤	垪	垰	埃	埆	埔
521	埓	堋	堙	堝	塲	堡	塢	塋	塰	毀
522	塒	堽	塹	墅	墹	墟	墫	墺	壞	墻
523	墸	墮	壅	壓	壑	壗	壙	壘	壥	壜
524	壤	壟	壯	壺	壹	壻	壼	壽	夂	夊
525	夐	夛	梦	夥	夬	夭	夲	夸	夾	竒

Last Digit

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
526	奕	奐	奎	奚	奘	奢	奠	奧	奬	奩
527	奋	奔	妁	妝	佞	侫	妣	妲	姆	姨
528	姜	妍	姙	姚	娥	娟	娑	娜	娉	娚
529	婀	婬	婉	娵	娶	婢	婪	媚	媼	媾
530	嫋	嫂	媽	嫣	嫗	嫦	嫩	嫖	嫺	嫻
531	嬌	嬈	嬖	嬲	嫐	嬪	嬶	嬾	孃	孅
532	孀	孑	孕	孚	孛	孥	孩	孰	孳	孵
533	學	斈	孺	宀	它	宦	宸	寃	寇	寉
534	寔	寐	寤	實	寢	寞	寥	寫	寰	寶
535	寳	尅	將	專	對	尓	尠	尢	尨	尸
536	尹	屁	屆	屎	屓	屐	屏	孱	屬	屮
537	乢	屶	屹	岌	岑	岔	妛	岫	岻	岶
538	岼	岷	峅	岾	峇	峙	峩	峽	峺	峭
539	嶌	峪	崋	崕	崗	嵜	崟	崛	崑	崔
540	崢	崚	崙	崘	嵌	嵒	嵎	嵋	嵬	嵳
541	嵶	嶇	嶄	嶂	嶢	嶝	嶬	嶮	嶽	嶐
542	嶷	嶼	巉	巍	巓	巒	巖	巛	巫	已
543	巵	帋	帚	帙	帑	帛	帶	帷	幄	幃
544	幀	幎	幗	幔	幟	幢	幤	幇	幵	并
545	幺	麼	广	庠	廁	廂	廈	廐	廏	廖
546	廚	廛	廝	廡	廢	廩	廬	廰	廱	廳
547	廴	廸	廾	弃	弉	彝	彜	弋	弑	弖
548	弩	弭	弸	彁	彈	彌	彎	弯	彑	彖
549	彗	彙	彡	彭	彳	彷	徃	徊	很	徑

Last Digit

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
550	徇	從	徙	徘	徠	徨	徭	徼	忖	忻
551	忤	忸	忱	忝	悳	忿	怡	恠	怙	怐
552	怩	怎	怱	怛	怕	怫	怦	怏	怺	恚
553	恁	恪	恷	恟	恊	恆	恍	恣	恃	恤
554	恂	恬	恫	恙	悁	悍	惧	悃	悚	悄
555	悛	悖	悗	悒	悧	悋	惡	悸	惓	悴
556	忰	悽	惆	悵	惘	慍	愕	愆	惶	惷
557	愀	惴	惺	愃	愡	惓	愎	愬	愱	愷
558	愍	慇	愾	愨	愧	慊	愿	愼	愬	愴
559	愽	慂	慄	慳	慷	慘	慚	慙	慫	慴
560	慯	慥	慱	慟	慝	慓	慵	憙	憖	憇
561	憬	憔	憚	憊	憊	憾	懌	懊	應	懷

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
562	慾	惺	愨	愀	惴	惶	惸	惚	惻	惱
563	愍	愎	慇	憬	愨	愫	慊	愆	慎	愬
564	愴	愽	愻	慄	慳	慘	慙	慚	慝	慾
565	慴	慔	慥	慱	慟	慓	慳	慲	慷	慾
566	憇	憁	憔	憚	憊	憫	憮	憝	憣	憬
567	應	懷	懈	懃	懆	懇	懼	懷	懦	懨
568	懍	懶	懺	懻	懿	懼	懾	戀	戈	
569	戉	戍	戌	戔	戛					
570		憂	戡	戮	戰	戲	戳	扁	扎	
571	扞	扣	扛	扠	扤	扡	扶	找	抒	
572	抓	抖	扑	抔	抝	抶	抻	拏	拿	
573	拆	擔	拈	拜	拌	拊	拇	拋	拉	
574	挌	拮	拱	挧	挂	挈	拯	拵	捐	挾
575	捍	搜	捏	掖	掎	掀	捶	掣	掬	
576	掉	掟	掵	捫	捩	掾	揩	揆	揉	掔
577	揉	揃	揶	揄	搖	搴	搆	搓	搦	搶
578	攝	搗	搨	搏	摧	摯	摶	摎	攪	撕
579	撓	撥	撩	撈	撼					
580		據	擒	擅	擇	撻	擂	擱	擧	
581	舉	擠	擡	抬	擣	擬	擶	擴	擲	擺
582	攏	攀	擽	攘	攜	攢	攞	攞	攴	
583	攵	攷	收	攸	畋	效	敖	敕	敍	敘
584	敞	敝	敲	數	斂	斃	變	斛	斝	斫
585	斷	旃	旆	旁	旄	旒	旌	旛	旛	无
586	旡	旱	杲	昊	昃	旻	杳	昵	昶	昴
587	昜	晏	晄	晉	晁	晞	晝	晤	晧	晨
588	晟	晢	晰	暃	暈	暎	暉	暄	暘	暝
589	暨	暹	曉	暾	暼					
590		曄	暸	曖	曚	曠	曦	曩	曰	
591	曳	曷	朏	朦	朧	霸	朮	朿		
592	朶	杁	朸	朷	杆	杞	杠	杙	杣	杤
593	枉	杰	枩	杼	杪	枌	枋	枦	枡	枅
594	枷	柯	枴	柬	枳	柩	枸	柤	柞	柝
595	柢	柮	枹	柎	柆	柧	檜	栞	框	栩
596	桀	桍	栲	桎	梳	栫	桙	档	桷	桿
597	梟	梏	梭	梔	條	梛	梃	檮	梹	桴

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
598	梵	梠	梺	椏	梍	桾	椁	棊	椈	棘
599	椢	椦	棡	椌	棍					
600		楷	楜	棕	椶	椒	椄	棗	棣	椥
601	棹	棠	棯	椨	椪	椚	椣	椡	棆	楹
602	楷	楜	楸	楫	楔	楾	楮	椹	楴	椽
603	楙	椰	楡	楞	楝	榁	楪	榲	榮	槐
604	榿	槁	槓	榾	槎	寨	槊	槝	榻	槃
605	榧	樮	榑	榠	榜	榕	榴	槞	槨	樂
606	樛	槿	權	槹	槲	槧	樅	榱	樞	槭
607	樔	槫	樊	樒	櫁	樣	樓	橄	樌	橲
608	樶	橸	橇	橢	橙	橦	橈	樸	樢	檐
609	檍	檠	檄	檢	檣					
610		檗	蘗	檻	櫃	櫂	檸	檳	檬	櫞
611	櫑	櫟	檪	櫚	櫪	櫻	欅	蘖	櫺	欒
612	欖	鬱	欟	欸	欷	盜	欹	飮	歇	歃
613	歉	歐	歙	歔	歛	歟	歡	歸	歹	歿
614	殀	殄	殃	殍	殘	殕	殞	殤	殪	殫
615	殯	殲	殱	殳	殷	殼	毆	毋	毓	毟
616	毬	毫	毳	毯	麾	氈	氓	气	氛	氤
617	氣	汞	汕	汢	汪	沂	沍	沚	沁	沛
618	汾	汨	汳	沒	沐	泄	泱	泓	沽	泗
619	泅	泝	沮	沱	沾					
620		沺	泛	泯	泙	泪	洟	衍	洶	洫
621	洽	洸	洙	洵	洳	洒	洌	浣	涓	浤
622	浚	浹	浙	涎	涕	濤	涅	淹	渕	渊
623	涵	淇	淦	涸	淆	淬	淞	淌	淨	淒
624	淅	淺	淙	淤	淕	淪	淮	渭	湮	渮
625	渙	湲	湟	渾	渣	湫	渫	湶	湍	渟
626	湃	渺	湎	渤	滿	渝	游	溂	溪	溘
627	滉	溷	滓	溽	溯	滄	溲	滔	滕	溏
628	溥	滂	溟	潁	漑	灌	滬	滸	滾	漿
629	滲	漱	滯	漲	滌					
630		漾	漓	滷	澆	潺	潸	澁	澀	潯
631	潛	濳	潭	澂	潼	潘	澎	澑	濂	潦
632	澳	澣	澡	澤	澹	濆	澪	濟	濕	濬
633	濔	濘	濱	濮	濛	瀉	瀋	濺	瀑	瀁

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
634	瀏	濾	瀛	瀚	潴	瀝	瀘	瀟	瀰	瀾
635	瀲	灑	灣	炙	炒	炯	烱	炬	炸	炳
636	炮	烟	烋	烝	烙	焉	烽	焜	焙	煥
637	熙	熈	煦	煢	煌	煖	煬	熏	燻	熄
638	煩	熨	熬	燗	熹	熾	燒	燉	燔	燎
639	燠	燬	燧	燵	燼					
640		燹	燿	爍	爐	爛	爨	爭	爬	爰
641	爲	爻	爼	爿	牆	牋	牘	牴	牾	犂
642	犁	犇	犒	犖	犢	犧	犹	犱	狃	
643	狆	狄	狎	狒	狢	狠	狡	狹	狷	倏
644	猗	猊	猜	猖	猝	猴	猯	猩	猥	猾
645	獎	獏	默	獗	獪	獨	獰	獸	獵	獻
646	獺	珈	玳	珎	玻	珀	珥	珮	珞	璢
647	琅	瑯	琥	珸	琲	琺	瑕	琿	瑟	瑙
648	瑁	瑜	瑩	瑰	瑣	瑪	瑶	瑾	璋	璞
649	璧	瓊	瓏	瓔	珱					
650		瓠	瓣	瓧	瓩	瓮	瓲	瓰	瓱	瓸
651	瓷	甄	甃	甅	甌	甎	甍	甕	甓	甞
652	甦	甬	甼	畄	畍	畊	畉	畛	畆	畚
653	畩	畤	畧	畫	畭	畸	當	疆	疇	畴
654	疊	疉	疂	疔	疚	疝	疥	疣	痂	疳
655	痃	疵	疽	疸	疼	疱	痍	痊	痒	痙
656	痣	痿	痾	痼	瘁	痰	痺	痲	痳	瘋
657	瘍	瘉	瘟	瘧	瘠	瘡	瘢	瘤	瘴	瘰
658	瘻	癇	癈	癆	癜	癘	癡	癢	癨	癩
659	癪	癧	癬	癰						
660		癲	癸	發	皀	皃	皈	皋	皎	
661	皖	皓	皙	皚	皰	皴	皸	皹	皺	盂
662	盍	盖	盒	盞	盡	盥	盧	盪	蘯	盻
663	眈	眇	眄	眩	眤	眞	眥	眦	眛	眷
664	眸	睇	睚	睨	睫	睛	睥	睿	睾	睹
665	瞎	瞋	瞑	瞠	瞞	瞰	瞶	瞹	瞿	瞼
666	瞽	瞻	矇	矍	矗	矚	矜	矣	矮	矼
667	砌	砒	礦	砠	礪	硅	碎	硴	碆	硼
668	碚	碌	碣	碵	碪	碯	磑	磆	磋	磔
669	碾	碼	磅	磊	磬					

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
670		磧	磚	磽	磴	礇	礒	礑	礙	礬
671	礫	祀	祠	祗	祟	祚	祕	祓	祺	祿
672	禊	禝	禧	齋	禪	禮	禳	禹	禺	秉
673	秕	秧	秬	秡	秣	稈	稍	稘	稙	稠
674	稟	禀	稱	稻	稾	稷	穃	穗	穉	稽
675	穡	穢	穩	龝	穰	穹	穽	窈	窗	窕
676	窘	窖	窩	竈	窰	窶	竅	竄	窿	邃
677	竇	竊	竍	竏	竕	竓	站	竚	竝	竡
678	竢	竦	竭	竰	笂	笏	笊	笆	笳	笘
679	笙	笞	笨	笑	筐					
680		筺	笄	筍	笋	筌	筅	筵	筥	筴
681	筧	筰	筱	筬	筮	箝	箘	箟	箍	箜
682	箚	箋	箒	箏	筝	箙	篋	篁	篌	篏
683	箴	篆	篝	篩	簑	簔	篦	篥	籠	簀
684	簇	簓	篳	篷	簗	簍	篶	簣	簧	簪
685	簟	簷	簫	簽	籌	籃	籔	籏	籀	籐
686	籘	籟	籤	籖	籥	籬	籵	粃	粐	粤
687	粭	粢	粫	粡	粨	粳	粲	粱	粮	粹
688	粽	糀	糅	糂	糘	糒	糜	糢	鬻	糯
689	糲	糴	糶	糺	紆					
690		紂	紜	紕	紊	絅	絋	紮	紲	紿
691	紵	絆	絳	絖	絎	絲	絨	絮	絏	絣
692	經	綉	絛	綏	絽	綛	綺	綮	綣	綵
693	緇	綽	綫	總	綢	綯	緜	綸	綟	綰
694	緘	緝	緤	緞	緻	緲	緡	縅	縊	縣
695	縡	縒	縱	縟	縉	縋	縢	繆	繦	縻
696	縵	縹	繃	縷	縲	縺	繧	繝	繖	繞
697	繙	繚	繹	繪	繩	繼	繻	纃	緕	繽
698	辮	繿	纈	纉	續	纒	纐	纓	纔	纖
699	纎	纛	纜	缸	缺					
700		罅	罌	罍	罎	罐	网	罕	罔	罘
701	罟	罠	罨	罩	罧	罸	羂	羆	羃	羈
702	羇	羌	羔	羞	羝	羚	羣	羯	羲	羹
703	羮	羶	羸	譱	翅	翆	翊	翕	翔	翡
704	翦	翩	翳	翹	飜	耆	耄	耋	耒	耘
705	耙	耜	耡	耨	耿	耻	聊	聆	聒	聘

First Three Digits	\	Last Digit								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
706	聚	智	睇	聯	聳	聲	聰	聶	聹	聽
707	聿	肆	肄	肅	肛	肓	肚	肭	冐	肬
708	胛	胥	胙	胝	胄	胚	胖	脉	胯	胱
709	脛	脩	脣	脯	腋					
710		隋	腆	脾	腓	腑	胼	腱	腮	腥
711	腦	腴	膃	膈	膊	膀	膂	膠	膕	膤
712	膣	腟	膓	膩	膰	膵	膾	膽	膾	臀
713	臂	膺	臉	臍	臑	臙	臘	臚	臟	臠
714	臡	臧	臺	臻	臾	舁	舂	舅	與	舊
715	舍	舐	舖	舩	舫	舸	舳	舴	艙	艘
716	艚	艟	艤	艢	艨	艪	艫	舮	艱	艷
717	艾	艸	艾	芍	芒	芫	芟	芻	芬	苡
718	苣	苟	苒	苴	苳	苺	莓	范	苻	苹
719	苞	茆	苜	茉	苙					
720		茵	茴	茖	茲	茱	荀	茹	荐	荅
721	茯	茫	茗	茘	莅	莚	莪	莟	莢	莖
722	茣	莎	莇	莊	荼	莵	荳	荵	莠	莉
723	莨	菴	萓	菫	菎	菽	萃	菘	萋	菁
724	菷	萇	菠	菲	萍	萢	萠	莽	萸	蔆
725	菻	葭	萪	萼	蕚	蒄	葷	葫	蒭	葮
726	蒂	葩	葆	萬	葯	葹	萵	蓊	葢	蒹
727	蒿	蒟	蓙	蒻	蓚	蓐	蓁	蓆	蓖	蒡
728	蒟	蒡	蒨	蒺	蓀	蓧	蓆	蓴	蕣	蓿
729	蓼	蕈	蕁	蘂	蕋					
730		蕕	薀	薤	薈	薑	薊	薨	蕭	薔
731	薛	藪	薇	薜	蕷	蕾	薐	藉	薺	藏
732	薹	藐	藕	藝	藥	藜	藹	蘊	蘓	蘋
733	藾	藺	蘆	蘢	蘚	蘰	蘿			
734	虍	乕	虔	號	虧	虱	蚓	蚣	蚩	蚪
735	蚋	蚌	蚶	蚯	蛄	蛆	蚰	蛉	蠣	蚫
736	蛔	蛞	蛩	蛬	蛟	蛛	蛯	蜒	蜆	蜈
737	蜀	蜃	蛻	蜑	蜉	蜍	蛹	蜊	蜴	蜿
738	蜷	蜻	蜥	蜩	蜚	蝠	蝟	蝸	蝌	蝎
739	蝴	蝗	蝨	蝮	蝙					
740		蝓	蝣	蝪	蠅	螢	螟	螂	螯	蟋
741	螽	蟀	蟐	雖	螫	蟄	螳	蟇	蟆	螻

First Three Digits	\	Last Digit								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
742	蟯	蟲	蟠	蠏	蠍	蟾	蟶	蟷	蠎	蟒
743	蠑	蠖	蠕	蠢	蠡	蠱	蠶	蠹	蠧	蠻
744	衄	衂	衒	衙	衞	衢	衫	袁	衾	袞
745	衵	衽	袵	衲	袂	袗	袒	袮	袙	袢
746	袍	袤	袰	袿	袱	裃	裄	裔	裘	裙
747	裝	裹	褂	裼	裴	裨	裲	褄	褌	褊
748	褓	襃	褞	褥	褪	褫	襁	襄	褻	褶
749	褸	襌	褝	襠	襞					
750		襦	襤	襭	襪	襯	襴	襷	襾	覃
751	覈	覊	覓	覘	覡	覩	覦	覬	覯	覲
752	覺	覽	覿	觀	觚	觜	觝	觧	觴	觸
753	訃	訖	訐	訌	訛	訝	訥	訶	詁	詛
754	詒	詆	詈	詼	詭	詬	詢	誅	誂	誄
755	誨	誡	誑	誥	誦	誚	誣	諄	諍	諂
756	諚	諫	諳	諧	諤	諱	謔	諠	諢	諷
757	諞	諛	謌	謇	謚	諡	謖	謐	謗	謠
758	謳	鞫	謦	謫	謾	謨	譁	譌	譏	譎
759	證	譖	譛	譚	譫					
760		譟	譬	譯	譴	譽	讀	讌	讎	讒
761	讓	讖	讌	讚	谺	豁	谿	豈	豌	豎
762	豐	豕	豢	豬	豸	豺	貂	貉	貅	貊
763	貍	貎	貔	豼	貘	戝	貭	貪	貽	貲
764	貳	貮	貶	賈	賁	賤	賣	賚	賽	賺
765	賻	贄	贅	贊	贇	贏	贍	贐	齎	贓
766	賍	贔	贖	赧	赭	赱	赳	趁	趙	跂
767	趾	趺	跏	跚	跖	跌	跛	跋	跪	跫
768	跟	跣	跼	踈	踉	跿	踝	踞	踐	踟
769	蹂	踵	踰	踴	蹊					
770		蹇	蹉	蹌	蹐	蹈	蹙	蹤	蹠	踪
771	蹣	蹕	蹶	蹲	蹼	躁	躇	躅	躄	躋
772	躊	躓	躑	躔	躙	躪	躡	躬	躰	軆
773	躾	軈	軋	軛	軣	軼	軻	軫	軾	輊
774	軻	輅	輕	輒	輙	輓	輜	輟	輛	輌
775	輒	輦	輳	輻	輹	轅	轂	輾	轌	轉
776	轆	轎	轗	轜	轢	轣	轤	辜	辟	辣
777	辭	辯	辷	迚	迥	迢	迪	迯	邇	迴

First Three Digits	\	Last Digit								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
778	逅	迹	迺	逑	逕	逡	逍	逞	逖	逋
779	逧	逶	逵	逹	迸					
780		遏	遐	遑	遒	逎	遉	逾	遖	遘
781	遞	遨	遯	遶	隨	遲	邂	遽	邁	邀
782	邊	邉	邏	邨	邯	邱	邵	郢	郤	扈
783	郛	鄂	鄒	鄙	鄲	鄰	酊	酖	酘	酣
784	酥	酩	酳	酲	醋	醉	醂	醢	醫	醯
785	醪	醵	醴	醺	釀	釁	釉	釋	釐	釖
786	釟	釡	釛	釼	釵	釶	鈞	釿	鈔	鈥
787	鈕	鈑	鉞	鉗	鉅	鉉	鉤	鉈	銕	鈿
788	鉋	鉐	銜	銖	銓	銛	鉚	鋏	銹	銷
789	鋩	錏	鋺	鍄	錮					
790		錙	錢	錚	錣	錺	錵	錻	鍜	鍠
791	鍼	鍮	鍖	鎰	鎬	鎭	鎔	鎹	鏖	鏗
792	鏨	鏥	鏘	鏃	鏝	鏐	鏈	鏤	鐚	鐔
793	鐓	鐃	鐇	鐐	鐶	鐫	鐵	鐡	鐚	鐿
794	鑄	鑛	鑠	鑢	鑞	鑪	鈩	鑰	鑵	鑷
795	鑽	鑚	鑼	鑾	钁	鑿	閂	閇	閊	閔
796	閖	閘	閙	閠	閨	閧	閟	閦	閹	閾
797	闃	闍	閹	閲	闌	闕	闔	闖	關	闡
798	闥	闢	闤	阡	阨	阮	阯	陂	陌	陏
799	陋	陷	陜	陞						
800		陝	陟	陦	陲	陬	隍	隘	隕	隗
801	險	隧	隱	隲	隰	隴	隶	隸	隹	雎
802	雋	雉	雍	襍	雜	霍	雕	雹	霄	霆
803	霈	霓	霎	霑	霏	霖	霙	霤	霪	霰
804	霹	霽	霾	靄	靆	靈	靂	靉	靜	靠
805	靤	靦	靨	勒	靫	靹	鞅	靼	鞄	鞁
806	靺	鞆	鞋	鞏	鞐	鞜	鞨	鞦	鞣	鞳
807	鞴	韃	韆	韈	韋	韜	韭	齏	韲	竟
808	韶	韵	頏	頌	頸	頤	頡	頷	頽	顆
809	顏	顋	顫	顯	顰					
810		顱	顴	顳	颪	颯	颱	颶	飄	飃
811	飆	飩	飫	餃	餉	餉	餔	饂	餡	餝
812	餞	餤	餠	餬	餮	餽	餾	饂	饉	饅
813	饐	饋	饑	饒	饌	饕	馗	馘	馥	馭

First Three Digits	\	Last Digit								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
814	馮	馼	駟	駛	駝	駘	駑	駭	駮	駱
815	駲	駻	駸	騁	騏	騅	駢	騙	騫	騷
816	驅	驂	驀	驃	騾	驕	驍	驛	驗	驟
817	驢	驥	驤	驩	驫	驪	骭	骰	骼	髀
818	髏	髑	髓	體	髞	髟	髢	髣	髦	髯
819	髫	髮	髴	髱	髷					
820		髻	鬆	鬘	鬚	鬟	鬢	鬣	鬥	鬧
821	鬨	鬩	鬪	鬮	鬯	鬲	魄	魃	魏	魍
822	魎	魑	魘	魴	鮓	鮃	鮑	鮖	鮗	鮟
823	鮠	鮨	鮴	鯀	鯊	鮹	鯆	鯏	鯑	鯒
824	鯣	鯢	鯤	鯔	鯡	鰺	鯲	鯱	鯰	鰕
825	鰔	鰉	鰓	鰌	鰆	鰈	鰒	鰊	鰄	鰮
826	鰛	鰥	鰤	鰡	鰰	鱇	鰲	鱆	鰾	鱚
827	鱠	鱧	鱶	鱸	鳧	鳬	鳰	鴉	鴈	鳫
828	鳩	鴈	鴎	鴑	鴟	鴑	鴣	鴟	鵄	鴕
829	鴒	鵁	鴿	鴾	鵈					
830		鵝	鵞	鵤	鵑	鵐	鵙	鵲	鶯	鵡
831	鶚	鶤	鶩	鶲	鶸	鶺	鷄	鷁	鶻	鶸
832	鶲	鷁	鶻	鶸	鷭	鷯	鷽	鸚	鸛	鸞
833	鶴	鶿	鷆	鷏	鷂	鷙	鹵	鹹	鹽	麁
834	麈	麋	麌	麒	麕	麑	麝	麥	麩	麸
835	麭	靡	黌	黎	黏	黐	黔	黜	點	黝
836	黠	黥	黨	黴	黶	黷	黹	黻	黼	黽
837	鼇	鼈	皷	鼕	鼡	鼬	鼾	齊	齒	
838	齔	齣	齟	齠	齡	齦	齧	齬	齪	齷
839	齲	齶	龕	龜	龠					
840		堯	槇	遙	瑤	凜	熙				

Weather Indicator List

■ Basic Status

☀	Clear skies (day)
☽	Clear skies (night)
☁	Cloudy
☔	Rain
☃	Snow
⚡	Thunder showers
0%	Chance of rain: 0%
10%	Chance of rain: 10%
20%	Chance of rain: 20%
30%	Chance of rain: 30%
40%	Chance of rain: 40%
50%	Chance of rain: 50%
60%	Chance of rain: 60%
70%	Chance of rain: 70%
80%	Chance of rain: 80%
90%	Chance of rain: 90%
100%	Chance of rain: 100%
▷	Then
╱	Partly/chance of

■ Pollen Count

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme

■ Cherry Blossom

	Flowering
	Almost full bloom
	Full bloom
	Beginning of petal fall

■ Fall Foliage

	No color change
	Colors appearing
	Peak
	Defoliating

■ Ultraviolet

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme

■ Typhoon

	Forming
	Approaching
	Caution necessary

■ Other

	Heavy rain
	Gale
	Notification

Specifications

SoftBank 001SH

Weight*	79.1 g (95.8 g with battery)
Continuous Talk Time*	210 minutes
Continuous Standby Time*	360 hours (handset closed)
Continuous TV Reception Time*	6 hours
Charging Time (power off)*	AC Charger: 140 minutes In-Car Charger: 140 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)*	50 x 102 x 15.6-17.4 mm (handset closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W

*Approximate value.

- Above values calculated with Backlight Brightness set to *Level:2*.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, in strong signal conditions without moving handset.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in strong signal conditions without moving handset. In Japan (3G service area), the value is calculated with IP Service Setting and Mobile Widget Auto Refresh set to *Off*.

- Continuous TV Reception Time is measured with a new, fully charged battery, with Set Brightness set to *2*, Tone set to *Normal* and Screen Size set to *Normal(Landscape)* with Headphones connected to External Device Port, until battery runs low (10% of capacity).
- Talk Time/Standby Time/TV Reception Time may vary with environment, status, settings, etc.
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

■ Handset Materials

Parts	Materials/Finishing
Housing, Battery Cover	ABS resin/UV painting
Display window, lens cover	Acrylic resin
Infrared Port	ABS resin
Sub Display window	Acrylic resin/In-mold decorating
Multi Selector (Cursor Keys), Center Key	PC resin/Solid printing (back)
Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Shortcuts & A/a Key, TV & Text Key, Start & Rakutomo Link Key, Clear/Back Key, Power On/Off & End Key, Keypad, ✳ Key, # Key, Dictionary Key, Multi Job & Manner Key	PC resin/UV painting

Parts	Materials/Finishing
Side Key (Shutter Key), External Device Port Cover	PC resin & elastomer/UV painting
Housing stop pads	Urethane resin
Screw cover	PET
Battery	PC resin & ABS resin
Battery contacts	Brass/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screws	SWCH16A/Trivalent chromate
USIM Tray	POM resin

Accessory

■ Battery

Voltage	3.7V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	770 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)*	35.4 x 46.3 x 4.6 mm (without protruding parts)

*Approximate value.

Getting Started

■ **Standby Shortcut**

Savable Items	19 per sheet (shared with widgets)

Universal Operations, Etc.

■ **Text Entry**

User Dictionary	250 entries (5 per reading) Word: 30 characters Reading: 8 hiragana
Acquire Dictionary	5 dictionaries
Paste List	10 text strings
Recoverable Deleted Characters	30,720 single-byte characters
Dictionary	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 47,100 words/phrases Genius English-Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 45,700 words/phrases Genius Japanese-English Dictionary: Approximately 55,800 words/phrases

■ **Phone Book**

Entry	1,000 entries
Name/Reading	Last/First: 32 characters each
Phone Number	5 numbers (32 digits each)
Mail Address	5 addresses (128 characters each)
Category	16 Categories
Address	Postal Code: 20 characters Country: 32 characters Others: 64 characters each
Office	Office Name/Division/Post: 32 characters each
Homepage	1,024 bytes
Note	256 characters
Mail Groups	20 Groups (20 members each) Group name: 16 characters

Calling

Call Log Records	Dialed: 30 Dialed Ranking: 10 Received: 30
Answer Phone/ Record Caller Voice	20 messages or 90 seconds
Auto Answer List	10 numbers
Speed Dial/Mail	100 numbers/addresses

Messaging

Memory	Received Msg.	10 MB or 3,000 messages
	Drafts	5 MB (or 1,000 messages between Drafts, Sent Messages and Unsent Messages)
	Sent Messages	
	Unsent Messages	
	Templates	61 MB (shared with Data Folder and S! Appli Library)
PC Mail/S! Mail Subject	512 single-byte characters	
PC Mail/S! Mail Message	Approximately 30,000 single-byte characters	
SMS Message	160 single-byte alphanumerics	
Auto Resend	2 times	
Attachment	20 files or 2 MB[*]	
Send Reservation	10 messages	
Signature	256 single-byte characters	
Recipient	20 numbers/addresses	
Folder	20 folders (20 sort keys each)	
Chat Folder	Memory	300 messages per folder
	Folder	10 folders (20 members each)

Graphic Mail	1 sound or Flash® file, or 40 images/My Pictograms (with 1 sound or Flash® file)
Auto Reply	20 numbers/addresses Reply Message: 256 single-byte characters per mode
Sort Spam Mail	Individual	20 entries
	Permitted List	20 entries

[*]Limit may be lower depending on message text, etc.

■ **PC Mail Settings**

PC Mail Account	Account	3 accounts
	Account Name	20 characters
Set Receiving	User Name	128 characters
	Password	40 characters
	ReceivingServer	128 characters
	Port Number	1 to 65535
Set Sending	Sender Name	20 characters
	Mail Address	128 characters
PC Mail DL	Individual Address	20 addresses

Internet

Download (Yahoo! Keitai)	500 KB per page
	10 MB for progressive downloads
Download (PC Site Browser)[1]	JPEG Images	3 MB
	Flash® Files	2 MB
History	300 pages for Yahoo! Keitai
	300 pages for PC Site Browser
URL Entry Log	10 URLs
Bookmarks[2] & Saved Pages	100 pages for Yahoo! Keitai
	100 pages for PC Site Browser
Tab	5 tabs at one time
Input Memory	20 entries
Streaming History	20 URLs
RSS Feed	30 entries (60 KB per entry)

[1] 1 MB each for files other than JPEG images and Flash® files. (Some media files are playable beyond 1 MB.)
[2] Folders are counted as pages.

Digital TV

Recorded File	ISDB-T mobile Video profile (SD-Video standard)
Recording Time (example)	80 minutes on 256 MB Memory Card
Marker	99 Markers (10 per file)
Split File	99 portions per file
Reservation List	5 entries (24 hours each on 1 GB or larger Memory Card)

Camera & Imaging

Mobile Camera

| Effective Pixels | 3.2 Megapixels |
| Auto Shut-off Time | Approximately 3 minutes |

Photo Camera

Zoom	1x - 24.8x	
Picture Size (W x H dots)	3M	1536 x 2048
	Full HD	1080 x 1920
	2M	1200 x 1600
	1.2M	960 x 1280
	VGA	480 x 640
	Wallpaper	240 x 400
	QVGA	240 x 320
	QQVGA	120 x 160
File Format	JPEG	
Memory	Approximately 60 files (at 3M, High Quality) on handset with no other files	
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss	
Shooting Distance	Macro: 10 cm	
Other	Use transparent PNG files of 40 KB or less as Frames	

Video Camera

Zoom	1x - 8.7x	
Record Size (W x H dots)	Extended	320 x 240 (QVGA)
		240 x 176 (HQVGA)
		176 x 144 (QCIF)
	For Message	320 x 240 (QVGA)
		176 x 144 (QCIF)
File Format	3GP	
Recording Capacity per Shot	Extended	Approximately 30 minutes* on Memory Card
	For Message	2 MB or 295 KB
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss	
Recording Distance	1.5 m in good light	

*Varies with handset usage, location or settings.

Editing Images

Picture Editor	Resize (W x H dots)	Wallpaper (240 x 400)
		Power On/Off (240 x 400)
		Incoming Call (160 x 160)
		Alarm (240 x 104)
		Mail Art (96 x 96)
		QVGA (240 x 320)
		Cut
	Retouch	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
	Paste	16 characters
	Correction	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
Composite	Merge Panorama	JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 dots and 240 x 320 dots

Media Player

Supported Formats	AAC (.mp4/.3gp/.m4a) (Some files may not play depending on sampling frequency and bit rate)	
All Music List	Music	Shows up to
	Chaku-Uta®	350 files each

S! Applications

Memory	100 items or 61 MB (shared with Messaging Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder)

Handy Extras

■ PIM/Life

Alarms	5 entries, Subject: 9 characters
Calendar[1]/Tasks	Schedule: 1,000 entries Tasks: 300 entries Subject: 32 characters Description: 128 characters Location: 16 characters Set Holiday: 10 holidays
Wakeup TV	Auto Shut-off	Approximately 30 minutes
Household Accounts	3,285 entries[2] (9,999,999 yen each)
Calculator	999,999,999,999
Expenses Memo	50 entries (999,999.99 yen each) per list x 3 lists

[1]Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of September 2010.
[2]Limit may be lower depending on the number of items in each entry.

■ Clock/Gauge

Stopwatch	23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds in 0.1-second increments Lap time: 4 records
Countdown Timer	99 minutes 59 seconds in 1-second increments
World Clock	City name: 16 characters

■ Doc./Rec.

Notepad	500 entries (8,192 characters each)	
Voice Recorder	For Message	Approximately 20 minutes (message size limit: 2 MB) or 3 minutes (message size limit: 300 KB) per file
	Extended Voice	99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
Scan Barcode (Continuous Mode)	UPC/JAN	50 codes
	QR Code	16 codes
Create QR Code	Equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji	
Scan Text	256 characters	

Mobile Widget

Savable Items	6 widgets (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status: 1, others: 5) per sheet x 4 sheets

Entertainment

■ S! Quick News

Savable Items	1 item for Special
	5 items between News Flash and General

■ e-Books

Text Copy	20 characters

■ S! Friend's Status

Member	30 members
My Status	Name: 7 characters Comment: 15 characters Status Label: 4 characters
Status Templates	Template name: 12 characters

■ S! Circle Talk

Participant	11 members
Speak Time	30 seconds each
Member List	30 entries (10 members per Group)

■ Blog Tool

Blog Details	5 entries	
Blog Title	16 characters	
Blog Settings (Mail)	Email Address	128 characters
	Title	32 characters
	Text	128 characters
	Picture Size	S (320 x 320) M (640 x 640) L (1024 x 1024) Send
Blog Settings (Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser)	URL for Posting	1,024 characters
	URL for Viewing	1,024 characters

Data Folder

Memory	61 MB (shared with Messaging Templates folder and S! Appli Library)

Memory Card

Backup File Name	yymmddXX* (XX: 2 digits/letters)

*yymmdd for Contents Keys.

Connectivity & File Backup

■ Infrared

Infrared	IrMC 1.1	
Transfer	Range	Within 20 cm

■ Bluetooth®

Communication System	Bluetooth® specification Ver. 2.1
Supported Profiles	Headset Profile Hands-Free Profile Dial-Up Networking Profile Object Push Profile File Transfer Profile Basic Imaging Profile Advanced Audio Distribution Profile Audio/Video Remote Control Profile
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 2
Range	Within 10 m
Device Search	16 devices
Pairing	32 devices
Device Name	16 characters
Printing	JPEG/PNG images

■ S! Addressbook Back-up

Log	10 synchronization records

Network

Add Network	5 Networks Country/Network code: 3 digits Name: 25 single-byte characters

Reference URLs

■ **SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/

■ **S! Addressbook Back-up**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html

■ **Messaging Basics**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/mail.html

■ **Custom Handset Address**
https://www.email.softbank.ne.jp/help/e/address.html

■ **Yahoo! Keitai**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/web.html

■ **Secure Remote Lock**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html

■ **microSD Memory Card Compatibility**
From PC (Japanese)
http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html
From Handset (Japanese)
http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/

■ **SVG-T**
From Handset (Japanese)
http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svgt/index_pdc.html

■ **Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting**
From PC
http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/
From Handset (Japanese)
http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/

Memory Card Structure & Contents

Memory Card Structure				Contents (Location when Viewed on Handset)
DCIM	XXXSHARP			Still images in Data Folder (DCIM)
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Local Contents		SD Local Contents
		Mail		Messaging folder backups (Received Msg., Sent Messages and Drafts)
		My Items	Book	e-Book files in Data Folder (Books)
			Bookmarks	Bookmark backup files
			Character	PNG files in Data Folder (Character)
			Custom Screens	Customized Screen files in Data Folder (Customized Screen)
			Flash(R)	Flash® Wallpaper files in Data Folder (Flash®)
			Flash(R) Ringtones	Flash® ringtones in Data Folder (Flash® Ringtones)
			Games and More	S! Applications
			Hot Status Template	Template files in Data Folder (Status Templates)
			Mail Art	Files in Data Folder (Mail Art)
			Message Templates	Graphic Mail templates in Templates folder
			Music	Music files in Data Folder (Music)
			Other Documents	Other files in Data Folder (Other Documents)
			Pictograms	GIF files in Data Folder (My Pictograms)
			Pictures	Still images in Data Folder (Pictures)
			Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies and other sound files in Data Folder (Ring Songs·Tones)
			Videos	Video files in Data Folder (Videos)
			Widget	Widget files in Data Folder (Widget)
		SH_Folder		Application management files
		Utility		Backup files (Phone Book), etc.
	SHARP	MOBILE		Backup files (User Dictionary), etc.

Menu List

Messaging

Function		Refer to
Received Msg.		P.4-15
Create Message		P.4-4
Retrieve New Msg.		P.4-28
Drafts		P.4-33
Templates		P.4-9
Sent Messages		P.4-15
Unsent Messages		P.4-33
Chat Folder		P.4-18
Server Mail Box	Mail List	P.4-28
	Retrieve All	P.4-28
	Delete All	P.4-31
	Mailbox Volume	P.4-34
Create New SMS		P.4-10
Settings	Address Settings	P.4-3
	View Settings	P.4-34
	Receive Settings	P.4-14
	Create/Send Settings	P.4-11
	PC Mail Settings	P.4-21
	SMS Settings	P.4-39
	Speed Dial/Mail	P.4-23
	Mail Groups	P.4-19
Memory Status		P.4-30

■ Settings: View Settings

Function	Refer to
Received Msg. View	P.4-34
Sent Msg. View	P.4-34
Message List View	P.4-34
Scroll Unit	P.4-34
Auto Play Attached Sound	P.4-34
Picture Appearance	P.4-34
Animation View	P.4-34
Address View	P.4-34

■ Settings: Receive Settings

Function		Refer to
Message Download	DL Size Limit	P.4-35
	Auto Settings	P.4-14
	Condition(Auto)	P.4-14
Auto Delete Received Msg.		P.4-35
Other Than Standby Screen	Incoming Display Setting	P.4-35
	View Setting	P.4-35
	Alert Sound	P.4-35
Secret Folder		P.4-35
Link to Feeling	Standby Screen Info.	P.4-35
	Light	P.4-35
	Vibration Pattern	P.4-36
	Ringtone	P.4-36
Spam Mail Settings	Sort Spam Mail	P.4-17
	Report Spam	P.4-36

■ Settings: Create/Send Settings

Function		Refer to
Create Msg. Size		P.4-36
Picture Auto Resize		P.4-36
Sending Status		P.4-36
Auto Resend		P.4-36
Auto Delete Sent Msg.		P.4-36
Signature		P.4-24
Send Option	Delivery Report	P.4-24
	Reply to Settings	P.4-37
Reply Settings	Reply With Text	P.4-37
	Auto Reply	P.4-30
	Set Quick Reply	P.4-30
Send File Settings		P.4-37
Restrictions Setting		P.4-11

■ Settings: PC Mail Settings

Function	Refer to
PC Mail Account	P.4-21
PC Mail DL	P.4-37
Auto Check	P.4-37
Word wrap	P.4-38

■ Settings: SMS Settings

Function	Refer to
Expiry Time	P.4-39
Message Center	P.4-39
Char-code	P.4-39

Yahoo!

Function	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3
Menu List	P.5-3
Bookmarks	P.5-8
Saved Pages	P.5-8
Web Search	P.5-11
Enter URL	P.5-3
History	P.5-3
PC Site Browser	P.5-5
Browser Settings	P.5-12

■ PC Site Browser

Function		Refer to
Homepage		P.5-5
Bookmarks		P.5-8
Saved Pages		P.5-8
Web Search		P.5-11
Enter URL		P.5-5
History		P.5-5
RSS Feed		P.5-9
Yahoo! Keitai		P.5-3
PC Site Browser Settings	Font Size	P.5-12
	Scroll Settings	P.5-13
	Cursor Settings	P.5-12
	Downloads	P.5-12
	Memory Operation	P.5-10
	Security Settings	P.5-16
	Download to	P.5-12
	Initialize Browser	P.5-16
	Reset Settings	P.5-16
	Warning Message	P.5-13
	Zoom Factor	P.5-12
	Softkey Area	P.5-5

■ Browser Settings

Function	Refer to
Font Size	P.5-12
Scroll Unit	P.5-13
Cursor Settings	P.5-12
Downloads	P.5-12
Memory Operation	P.5-10
Security Settings	P.5-16
Download to	P.5-12
Initialize Browser	P.5-16
Reset Settings	P.5-16

S! Appli

Function	Refer to
S! Appli Library	P.8-7
Settings	P.8-10
Information	P.8-11

■ Settings

Function		Refer to
Application Volume		P.8-10
Backlight		P.8-11
Vibration		P.8-11
Synchronization		P.8-11
Calls & Alarms		P.8-10
Screensaver	Switch On/Off	P.8-10
	Activation Time	P.8-10
	Stop Auto Start	P.8-10
Surround		P.8-10
Set to Default		P.8-11
Memory All Clear		P.8-11

Entertainment

Function		Refer to
S! Information Channel/ Weather	What's New	P.10-6
	Back Issue	P.10-6
	Registration/Cancel	P.10-6
	Get Latest Contents	P.10-18
	Notification	P.10-18
	Weather Indicator	P.10-6
S! Quick News		P.10-5
Free Contents		P.10-7
S! Contents Store		P.10-7
S! Friend's Status		P.10-9
S! Circle Talk		P.10-12
Blog Tool		P.10-14
BookSurfing		P.10-8
e-Book Viewer		P.10-8

■ S! Information Channel/Weather: Weather Indicator

Function		Refer to
Weather		P.10-19
Manual Update		P.10-6
Settings	Standby Setting	P.10-19
	Weather Notif.	P.10-19
	Icon Update	P.10-19

■ S! Quick News

Function		Refer to
S! Quick News List		P.10-5
Settings	Auto Refresh	P.10-18
	Show Image	P.10-18
	Check Schedule	P.10-18
	Change Skin	P.10-18
	Delete S! Quick News Lists	P.10-18

Camera

Function		Refer to
Photo Camera		**P.7-4**
Video Camera		**P.7-5**
Barcode Reader		**P.9-27**
Scan Card		**P.9-29**
Scan Receipt		**P.9-13**
Kanji Grabber		**P.9-31**
Review		**P.7-6**
Photo Settings	Picture Size	**P.7-14**
	Picture Quality	**P.7-13**
	Settings	**P.7-13**
Video Settings	Record Time/Size	**P.7-14**
	Microphone	**P.7-14**
	Save Settings	**P.7-13**

■ Photo Camera

Function		Refer to
Shooting Settings	Exposure	**P.7-13**
	Focus Setting	**P.7-13**
	White Balance	**P.7-14**
Modes	Add Frame	**P.7-7**
	Continuous Shoot	**P.7-7**
Barcode/Scan		**P.9-27**
Review		**P.7-6**
Picture Size		**P.7-14**
Scene		**P.7-14**
Picture Quality		**P.7-13**
Self-timer		**P.7-7**
Settings		**P.7-13**
Help		**P.7-13**

■ Video Camera

Function		Refer to
Record Settings	Exposure	**P.7-13**
	Focus	**P.7-13**
Display Size		**P.7-14**
Review		**P.7-6**
Record Time/Size		**P.7-14**
Microphone		**P.7-14**
Video Quality		**P.7-13**
Self-timer		**P.7-7**
Settings		**P.7-13**
Help		**P.7-13**

■ Photo Settings: Settings

Function	Refer to
Focus Mark	**P.7-13**
Display Icons	**P.7-13**
Shutter Sound	**P.7-13**
Save Pictures to	**P.7-13**
Auto Save	**P.7-13**
Set Remote Shutter	**P.7-13**
Set Send Key	**P.7-13**

■ Video Settings: Save Settings

Function	Refer to
Save Videos to	**P.7-13**
Auto Save	**P.7-13**

Media

Function	Refer to
Music	**P.8-4**
Videos	**P.8-5**
Streaming	**P.5-13**

■ Music

Function		Refer to
Last Played Music		**P.8-8**
My Music		**P.8-6**
Download Music		**P.8-3**
Settings	Sound Effects	**P.8-8**
	Playback Mode	**P.8-8**
	⑧Sound Output	**P.8-8**

■ Videos

Function		Refer to
Last Played Video		**P.8-8**
My Videos		**P.8-5**
Download Videos		**P.8-3**
Settings	Playback Mode	**P.8-8**
	Backlight	**P.8-8**
	Display Size	**P.8-8**
	Sound Effects	**P.8-8**
	Web Link Setting	**P.8-8**
	⑧Sound Output	**P.8-8**

Tools

■ PIM/Life

Function		Refer to
Alarms		P.9-8
Calendar		P.9-2
Exchange Profile		P.13-4
Wakeup TV		P.9-10
Relaxation Time		P.9-12
Tasks		P.9-6
Household Accounts		P.9-13
Calculator		P.9-17
Expenses Memo		P.9-18
Simulated Call	Receive Simulated Call	P.9-37
	Switch On/Off	P.9-19
	Set Caller	P.9-19
	Assign Tone	P.9-19
	Receive Timing	P.9-19
	For Silent Mode	P.9-37

■ Clock/Gauge

Function	Refer to
Stopwatch	P.9-20
Countdown Timer	P.9-21
World Clock	P.9-22
Hour Minder	P.9-23
Battery Meter	P.1-24

■ Doc./Rec.

Function		Refer to
Dictionary		P.2-13
Search		P.2-15
Notepad		P.9-24
Scratch Pad		P.2-16
ASCII Art		P.9-25
Voice Recorder	Record Time	P.9-38
	Ring Songs·Tones	P.9-26
	Save Recording to	P.9-38
Barcode/ Scan	Barcode Reader	P.9-27
	Open Barcode	P.9-39
	Create QR Code	P.9-28
	Scan Card	P.9-29
	Scan Receipt	P.9-13
	Kanji Grabber	P.9-31
	Scan Text	P.9-30
	Scanned Results	P.9-39
Phone Help		P.1-24

■ Connectivity

Function		Refer to
Bluetooth	Switch On/Off	P.13-17
	Add Device	P.13-6
	Paired Devices	P.13-7
	Send All	P.13-8
	Setting Watch	P.13-18
	My Device Settings	P.13-17
	My Device Details	P.13-17
Infrared	Switch On/Off	P.13-17
	Send All	P.13-3
Card Reader Mode		P.13-9
USB Charge		P.1-25
Memory Card		P.12-6
Backup/Restore		P.13-11

Appendix

15

15-27

Data Folder

Function	Refer to
Pictures	P.7-8
DCIM	P.12-2
Ring Songs·Tones	P.9-26
S! Appli	P.8-7
Widget	P.10-2
Music	P.12-2
Videos	P.12-2
Books	P.12-2
Customized Screen	P.2-4
Status Templates	P.12-2
Flash®	P.12-2
Other Documents	P.12-2
Memory Status	P.12-2

Widget

Function	Refer to
Widget Store	P.10-2
Widget Contents	P.10-2
Settings	P.10-16

TV

Function	Refer to
Digital TV	P.6-2
TV Player	P.6-8
TV Link	P.6-12
TV Listing	P.6-6
Reservation List	P.6-9
Settings	P.6-11

■ Settings

Function		Refer to
TV Alarm		P.6-14
Broadcast Data	Set Recording	P.6-13
	Image Location	P.6-13
	Notify Connection	P.6-12
	Location	P.6-12
	Manufacture Number	P.6-12
	Delete StationData	P.6-11
Screen Size		P.6-4
Set Landscape		P.6-11
Sound Output		P.6-11
⑧Sound Output		P.6-11
Calls & Alarms		P.6-11
TV Reserve Prior		P.6-14
Auto Exit	Auto Exit Time	P.6-11
	Close Action	P.6-11

Phone

Function		Refer to
Phone Book		P.2-17
Add New Entry		P.2-17
Information		P.1-25
Call Log		P.3-9
Play Messages		P.3-5
Play Voicemail		P.3-14
S! Addressbook Back-up		P.13-13
My Details		P.1-24
Set Category		P.2-18
Mail Groups		P.4-19
Rakutomo Link		P.3-8
Speed Dial/Mail		P.3-7
Touch-Tone Signal List		P.3-17
Settings/ Manage	Ph.Book Settings	P.2-22
	Call Log Setting	P.3-18
	Manage Entries	P.2-24

Settings

■ Sound/Display

Function	Refer to
Mode Settings	P.1-26
Display	P.14-3
Customized Screen	P.2-4
Sounds & Alerts	P.2-5
Date & Time	P.14-2
言語選択 (Language)	P.14-3
Ringer Output	P.14-6
Earpiece Volume	P.3-16
Change Menu	P.1-17

■ Sound/Display: Display

Function		Refer to
Wallpaper		P.2-3
System Graphics		P.14-3
VeilView		P.1-27
Display Effects		P.14-3
Font Settings		P.2-2
Standby Display	Clock/Calendar	P.14-4
	Show Widget	P.14-4
	Show Operator Name	P.14-4
Mini Battery		P.1-27
Greeting Message		P.14-3
Sub-Display	Duration	P.14-4
	Messages	P.14-4
	Display Date&Time	P.14-4
	Clock Type	P.14-4
	Caller Display	P.14-4
Backlight		P.14-3
Display Saving		P.14-3
Dial Number		P.14-3

■ Sound/Display: Sounds & Alerts

Function	Refer to
Volume	P.14-5
Ringtone/videos	P.2-5
Machi-Uta	P.2-5
System Sounds	P.14-6
Vibration	P.2-5
Event Light	P.14-5
Status Light	P.14-5
Any Key Answer	P.14-5
Surround	P.14-6

■ Sound/Display: Date & Time

Function	Refer to
Set Date/Time	P.14-2
Time Correction	P.14-2
Daylight Saving	P.14-2
Set Time Zone	P.14-2
Clock/Calendar	P.14-4
World Clock	P.9-22
Auto World Clock	P.9-22
Alarms	P.9-8
Set Holiday	P.9-32
Time Format	P.14-2
Date Format	P.14-2
Calendar Format	P.14-2

■ Phone/🔁

Function		Refer to
User Dictionary		P.2-12
Set Key Shortcut		P.1-14
Set Key Light		P.14-4
Double Number	Switch On/Off	P.1-21
	Double Mode	P.1-23
	Mode Name	P.1-26
	Reject By Line	P.1-26
	Show Missed	P.1-26
	Packet Warning	P.1-26
	Send Priority	P.1-26
Memory Card		P.12-6
Backup/ Restore	Backup All Items	P.13-19
	Backup Selected Items	P.13-11
	Restore All Items	P.13-19
	Restore Selected Items	P.13-12
	Settings/Manage	P.13-19
Locks		P.11-2
Software Update		P.15-5
Master Reset	Reset Settings	P.14-9
	Reset All	P.14-9

Appendix

15

■ **Phone/🔁 : Memory Card**

Function		Refer to
DPOF	Number of Copies	P.7-12
	Settings	P.7-15
	Check Settings	P.7-12
	Reset Settings	P.7-15
SD Local Contents		P.12-8
Format Card		P.12-6
Memory Status		P.12-2

■ **Phone/🔁 : Locks**

Function		Refer to
PIN Entry		P.11-2
Function Lock		P.11-2
IP Service Setting		P.14-8
Function Control		P.11-4
Application Lock		P.11-3
History Lock		P.11-3
Show Secret Data		P.11-3
Set Lock Message		P.11-5
Handset Code Settings	Need/UnNeed Setting	P.1-20
	Save Handset Code	P.1-19
Administrator Setting		P.1-20

■ **Call**

Function		Refer to
Call Time/ Data Counter	Call Timers	P.3-10
	Data Counter	P.3-18
	Call Time Counter	P.3-18
	Minute Minder	P.3-18
Answer Phone	Switch On/Off	P.3-5
	Answer Time	P.3-15
	Outgoing Message	P.3-15
	Volume	P.3-15
Voicemail/ Call Forwarding	Voicemail	P.3-14
	Diverts	P.3-13
	Cancel All	P.3-14
	Status	P.3-20
Video Call	Camera Picture	P.3-22
	Incoming Picture	P.3-22
	Outgoing Picture	P.3-22
	Hold Guidance Pict	P.3-22
	Backlight	P.3-22
	Loudspeaker	P.3-22
	Mute Microphone	P.3-22
	Remote Monitor	P.3-15
Caller ID		P.3-21
⟨out⟩ Missed Calls		P.3-14
Int'l Calling	Int'l Prefix	P.3-16
	Country Code	P.3-16
	Roaming Dial Assistant	P.3-16
Call Barring	Bar Outgoing Calls	P.3-20
	Restrict Destinations	P.3-11
	Bar Incoming Calls	P.3-21
	Reject Numbers	P.3-12
Auto Answer		P.3-21
Call Waiting		P.3-20

■ **Network**

Function	Refer to
Select Network	P.14-7
Re-search Signal	P.14-7
Offline Mode	P.1-18
Retrieve NW Info	P.14-7
Location Info	P.14-8
Network Info	P.14-7
External Device	P.14-7

Index

Objectives

Warranty & Service

■ **Warranty**

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

● Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.

● Read contents and keep in a safe place.

● The warranty term is described in the warranty.

■ **After-Sales Services**

See **P.15-6** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank Mobile for service or repairs.

If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.15-39**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

● Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.

● Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-39**).

Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

● SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

● SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.

● Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.

Customer Service

For information about SoftBank handsets or services, call General Information.
For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

■**SoftBank Mobile Customer Center**

General Information	**Customer Assistance**
From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157**	From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **113**
From a landline/IP phone, dial toll free at **0800-919-0157**	From a landline/IP phone, dial toll free at **0800-919-0113**

If you cannot reach a toll free number, use the number (charges apply) below for your service area:

Hokkaido Area Tohoku Area Hokuriku Area Kanto, Koshinetsu Area	022-380-4380	Tokai Area	052-388-2002
Kansai Area	06-7669-0180	Chugoku, Shikoku Area Kyushu, Okinawa Area	092-687-0010

■**SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center**

> From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491** (toll free from SoftBank handsets)
> If handset is lost/stolen, call this number immediately (international charges apply)

SoftBank 001SH User Guide

December 2010, First Edition
SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 001SH
Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:
- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.

モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.